Compact SCR Power Controller

EPack Three Phase

(Firmware version 6)

HA033541 Issue 02

03/2021



Eurotherm.

by Schneider Electric

Legal Information

The information provided in this documentation contains general descriptions and/or technical characteristics of the performance of the products contained herein. This documentation is not intended as a substitute for and is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of these products for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user or integrator to perform the appropriate and complete risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof. Eurotherm Limited, Schneider Electric or any of its affiliates or subsidiaries shall not be responsible or liable for misuse of the information contained herein.

If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us.

You agree not to reproduce, other than for your own personal, non-commercial use, all or part of this document on any medium whatsoever without permission of Eurotherm Limited, given in writing. You also agree not to establish any hypertext links to this document or its content. Eurotherm Limited does not grant any right or license for the personal and non-commercial use of the document or its content, except for a non-exclusive license to consult it on an "as-is" basis, at your own risk. All other rights are reserved.

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product. For reasons of safety and to help ensure compliance with documented system data, only the manufacturer should perform repairs to components.

When devices are used for applications with technical safety requirements, the relevant instructions must be followed.

Failure to use Eurotherm Limited software or approved software with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Failure to observe this information can result in injury or equipment damage.

Eurotherm, EurothermSuite, ECAT, EFit, EPack, EPower, Eycon, Eyris, Chessell, Mini8, nanodac, optivis, piccolo and versadac are trademarks of Eurotherm Limited SE, its subsidiaries and affiliated companies. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

© 2021 Eurotherm Limited. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	5
Safety Information	12
Important Information	12
Safety Notes	13
Reasonable use and responsibility	17
SELV	17
Symbols Used in the Instrument Labeling	18
Hazardous Substances	18
Cybersecurity	19
Introduction	19
Cybersecurity Good Practices	
Comms Port and Channel Enabled by Default	
Comms Port and Channel Disabled by Default	
Achilles Communications Certification	20
Introduction	21
Unpacking the Units	
Order Code	
Short-Wave Infrared Resistor (SWIR)	
Basic Product Coding	
Software Upgrade Options	
Installation	
Mechanical Installation	
Mounting details	
Mechanical installation requirements	
Mounted clearance dimensions	
Bulkhead Mounting	
DIN Rail Mounting	
Dimensions	34
16A to 32A unit dimensions	34
40A to 63A unit dimensions	35
80A to 100A unit dimensions	
125A unit dimensions	
Summary - all units (16A - 125A)	
Electrical Installation	
Connection Details	
Auxiliary supply	
24V ac/dc auxiliary supply	
85 to 550Vac auxiliary supply	
Connections (Supply Power and Load)	
16A to 32A and 40A to 63A Units 80A, 100A and 125A units	
Load Configurations	
Delta	
Star	
Signal wiring	
Firing Enable	
Alarm Acknowledge	
Main Setpoint	
Relay Output	
I/O Input & Output Details	
Network Communications	
Ethernet Wiring	
Communications Pinouts	
Communications startup	

Fuse Holders Contact Data (Fuse Ordering Code HSM)	59
Operator Interface	61
Display	61
Status area	
Softkey icons	
Pushbuttons	
Pushbutton functions Menu item value selection	
Front Panel Event Indication	
Instrument events	
Indication alarms	
System alarms	
Process alarms	64
Quickcode	65
Quickcode Menu Parameters Description	66
Firing modes definitions	
Logic	
Burst Fixed Firing	
Burst Variable Firing	
Phase Angle Control	
Intelligent Half-Cycle (IHC) Mode	
50% Duty Cycle	
33% Duty Cycle	
66% Duty Cycle	
Feedback type	
Transfer Mode	
Limitation features Firing Angle Limiting (in Phase Angle mode)	
Firing Angle Limiting (in Phase Angle mode)	
Duty Cycle Limiting (in Burst mode)	
Chop Off Definition	73
Chop Off Definition	73 75
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support	73 75 75
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP	73 75 75 75
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction	
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features	
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction	73 75 75 77 77 77 78 79
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support	73 75 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing	73 75 75 77 77 77 78 79 79 80 80
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 80 80 81
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 80 80 81 81
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange	73 75 75 77 78 79 79 80 81 81 81 82
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master	73 75 75 77 78 79 79 80 80 81 81 81 81 84
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange	73 75 75 77 77 77 79 79 79 80 80 81 81 81 84 84 84
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 80 81 81 81 84 84 84 84 84
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79 80 80 81 81 81 84 84 84 84 90 90
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 80 80 80 81 81 81 81 84 90 90 91
Chop Off Definition. Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP. Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support. Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit. Dynamic IP Addressing. Fixed IP Addressing. Default Gateway. Data Exchange Mapping. Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange. Setting Up The Master. Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange. Establishing Communications. Data Formats. The EDS File. Troubleshooting.	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 81 81 81 82 84 84 90 90 90 91 91
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 81 81 81 82 84 84 90 90 90 91 91 92
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features. CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats. The EDS File Troubleshooting	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 81 81 81 81 82 84 84 90 90 90 91 91 92 92
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP. Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Protocol Basics Parameter Resolution	73 75 75 77 77 77 78 79 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange. Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Protocol Basics Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Protocol Basics Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers Wait Period	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 79 79 79
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit. Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Protocol Basics Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers Wait Period Latency	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers Wait Period Latency Modbus Advanced Topics	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 90 91 91 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 93 94 94 95
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Protocol Basics Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers Wait Period Latency Modbus Advanced Topics Access to Full Resolution Floating Point and Timing Data	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 79 80 80 80 80 80 81 81 81 81 81 82 84 84 84 90 90 91 91 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92
Chop Off Definition Communications Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support EtherNet/IP Introduction EPack Power Controller EtherNet/IP Features CIP Object Support Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit Dynamic IP Addressing Fixed IP Addressing Default Gateway Data Exchange Mapping Configuring the Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Setting Up The Master Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange Establishing Communications Data Formats The EDS File Troubleshooting Modbus Overview Parameter Resolution Reading of Large Numbers Wodbus Advanced Topics	73 75 75 77 77 78 79 79 80 79 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 80 90 91 91 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92 92

Floating Point Parameters	
Time Type Parameters	
Ethernet (Modbus TCP)	
Instrument setup	
Dynamic IP Addressing	98
Fixed IP Addressing	99
Default Gateway	99
Preferred Master	99
iTools Setup	99
Automatic Configuration	
Manual Configuration	
PROFINET	
PROFINET Features	
PROFINET Wiring	
iTools Connection	
Setting up the EPack Controller for PROFINET	103
Commissioning using DCP protocol	
Commissioning using 'Fixed' IP Mode'	
Setting up the IP configuration via iTools	
Device Name	
Device Name via the DCP protocol	
Display of the Device Name on the EPack screen	
Display of the Device Name in iTools	106
Other DCP Services	
Flash LED (also called "Flash Once")	106
Reset to factory	106
EPack PN Modules	107
Commissioning directly 'out-of-the-box'	107
List of the standard PROFINET Modules used by EPack	
Fieldbus I/O Gateway IOGW Modules (Generic Modules)	
Reduced Fieldbus I/O Gateway RIOGW Modules (Generic Module)	
EPack PROFINET Slots	
	11()
General EPack's Slot organization	
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange	.110
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data)	.110 .111
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings	.110 .111 .112
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block	.110 .111 .112 .113
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File	.110 .111 .112 .113 .113 .114 .114
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats	.110 .111 .112 .113 .113 .114 .114
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129 130
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .114 .115 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 .114 .115 .119 .120 .121 .123 .124 .129 .130 .131 .132 .133
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 119 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alm Disable menu Alm Stop menu Alm Relay menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alm Disable menu Alm Latch Menu Alm Stop menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu Settings menu Settings menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alm Disable menu Alm Latch Menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu Access menu Settings menu Access menu Access menu Access menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alm Disable menu Alm Latch Menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu Access menu Settings menu Access menu Access menu Access menu	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .115 .114 .115 .114 .115 .119 .120 .121 .123 .124 .129 .130 .131 .132 .133 .134 .135 .136 .137 .138 .139 .141
Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data) PROFINET Acyclic Readings Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block Data Formats The GSD File Alarm Notification Configuration from the Front Panel Menu Pages Comms menu Meas menu Strat menu Adjust menu PLF menu Info menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alarms menu Alm Disable menu Alm Stop menu Alm Relay menu DI Stat menu PLF Adjust menu Access to Menus Access to Menus	.110 .111 .112 .113 .114 .114 .115 110 120 121 123 124 126 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 141 141

Access Menu	
Alarm Configuration	
Communications Configuration	
Control Configuration	
Control setup menu	
Parameters	
Control Main menu	
Parameters	
Control limit configuration	
Parameters	
Control diagnostic menu	
Parameters	
Control Alarm disable menu	
Parameters	
Control Alarm Detection Parameters	
Parameters	
Control Alarm signaling parameters	
Parameters	
Control Alarm Latch parameters	
Parameters	
Control Alarm Acknowledgement parameters	
Parameters	
Control Alarm Stop parameters	
Parameters	
AlmRelay, Control Alarm Relay	
Parameters	
Counter Configuration	
Parameters	
Cascading Counters	157
Energy Configuration	158
Parameters	158
Resolution	159
Fault Detection Menu	160
Parameters	160
Firing Output Menu	162
Examples	163
Safety Ramps, Soft Start and Delayed Trigger, firing types	163
Unbalanced Load Management (ULM)	165
Input/Output (IO) Configuration	166
Analog Input configuration	167
Ai Main	167
AlmDis	168
AlmDet	168
AlmSig	168
AlmLat	
AlmAck	168
AlmStop	
AlmRelay	
Digital Input configuration	
Parameters	
Relay status	171
Parameters	
Instrument Configuration Menu	172
Instrument Display configuration	
Parameters	
Instrument Hardware configuration	
Parameters	
Instrument options	
Parameters	
Scaling Factor	
SetProv Example	
IP Monitor Configuration	
Parameters	
	-

Lgc2 (Two Input Logic Operator) Menu	
Lgc2 Parameters	177
Lgc8 (Eight-input Logic Operator) Configuration	179
Parameters	
LGC8 schematic	
Invert input decoding table	
LIN16 Input Linearization	
Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities	
Input Linearization Parameters	184
Math2 Menu	
Math2 Parameters	185
Modulator Configuration	187
Modulator parameters	187
Network Configuration	
Network Meas Menu	
Parameters	189
Network Setup configuration	
Parameters	
Network Alarms	
AlmDis	
Network AlmDet Submenu	
Network Almsig Submenu	
Network Almlat Submenu	
Network Almack Submenu	
Network Almstop Submenu	
Network Almrelay Submenu	
Qcode	
Parameters	
Setprov Configuration Menu	
Setpoint provider parameters	
Timer Configuration	
Parameters	
Timer examples	
Totalizer Configuration	
Parameters	
User Value Configuration Menu	
User Value parameters	
Using iTools	205
iTools connection	205
Automatic detection	
Ethernet (Modbus TCP) communications	
Graphical Wiring Editor	
Toolbar	
Wiring Editor Operating Details	
Component Selection	
Block Execution Order	
Function Blocks	210
Wires	213
Wire Colors	215
Thick Wires	215
Comments	215
Monitors	216
Downloading	217
Colors	
Diagram Context Menu	
Compounds	
Tool Tips	
Parameter Explorer	
Parameter Explorer Detail	
Explorer Tools	
Context Menu	223
	220

Watch/Recipe Editor	
Creating a Watch List	226
Adding Parameters to the Watch List	
Data Set Creation	
Watch Recipe Toolbar Icons	
Watch/Recipe Context Menu	228
Parameter Addresses (Modbus)	
Introduction	
Parameter Types	
Parameter Scaling	
Parameter List	231
Alarms	
Global System Monitoring	
System Alarms	
Missing mains	
Thyristor short circuit	
Over temperature	
Network dips Mains frequency fault detected	
Chop Off alarm	
Process Alarms	
Total Load Failure (TLF)	
Closed Loop alarm	
External input alarm	
Over current detection	
Over Voltage Alarm	
Under Voltage Alarm	234
Partial Load Failure (PLF)	235
Partial Load Unbalance (PLU)	235
Indication Alarms	235
Process Value Transfer active	
Limitation active	
Load Over-Current	235
Maintenance	237
Precautions	237
Reasonable use and responsibility	
Preventive Maintenance	
Fusing	
Fuse Holders Contacts Kit	
Fuse holder dimensions	
Auxiliary supply fuse protection	
Instrument upgrade iTools upgrade	
Firmware upgrade	
Software upgrade	
Obtaining a Passcode via Telephone	
Obtaining a Passcode via iTools	
EPack Licence Notice	
Technical Specification	
Standards	252
Installation Categories	
Specification	
Auxiliary supply	
Power	
Physical	
Environment	
Operator Interface	259
Inputs/Outputs	
Digital Inputs	260

Relay Specification	261
Fuse Holders Contacts Kit Specification	261
Mains Network Measurements	262
Communications	262
Mains Network Measurements	262

Safety Information

Important Information

Read these instructions carefully and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this manual or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of either symbol to a "Danger" or "Warning" safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



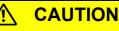
This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in** death or serious injury.



WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** death or serious injury.



CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See applicable national standards e.g. NFPA70E, CSA Z462, BS 7671, NFC 18-510.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Refer to manual for installation and servicing.
- The product is not suitable for isolation applications, within the meaning of EN60947-1. Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on the loads of the equipment.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- If on receipt, the unit or any part within is damaged, do not install but contact your supplier.
- Do not disassemble, repair or modify the equipment. Contact your supplier for repair.
- This product must be installed, connected and used in compliance with prevailing standards and/or installation regulations.
- Do not exceed the device's ratings.
- The unit must be installed in an enclosure or cabinet connected to the protective earth ground.
- Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the product is mounted.
- Do not allow anything to fall through the case apertures and ingress the product.
- Before any other connection is made, the protective earth ground terminal must be connected to a protective conductor.
- Protective conductor must be sized in compliance with local and national regulatory requirements.
- Tighten all connections in conformance with the torque specifications. Periodic inspections are required.
- High speed fuses (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device), as listed in fusing sections, are mandatory to protect EPack against load short circuit.
- If opening of either the branch circuit protective device or the high-speed fuses (supplemental fuses) occurs, the product must be examined by suitably qualified personnel and replaced if damaged.
- A High-speed fuse (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device) or a double protection fuse as listed in fusing sections is mandatory for 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply.
- If opening of any fuses or branch circuit protection device that supply the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply occurs, first check the wiring. If the wiring is not damaged, do not replace the fuse and contact the manufacturer's local service center.
- The maximum voltage between any pole of the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply and all other terminals must be lower than 550Vac.
- The "24V auxiliary supply" is an SELV circuit. The supply Voltage must be derived from a SELV or PELV circuit.
- The I/O Input & Output, the Communications ports are SELV circuit. They must be connected to SELV or PELV circuit.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- The relay output and the fuse holders contacts are compliant to the SELV requirements; they can be connected to SELV, PELV circuit or to voltage up to 230V (maximum value of rated operational voltage to earth:230V)
- Ensure all cables and wiring harness are secured using a relevant strain relief mechanism.
- Respect electrical installation requirements to ensure optimum IP rating.
- Close doors and plug-in terminals before turning on power to this equipment.
- Use appropriate safety interlocks where personnel and/or equipment hazards exist.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

HAZARD OF FIRE

- WITHOUT Current limit function by phase angle reduction, if SWIR (Infrared) is NOT selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.
- WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the nominal current of the load.
- Setting of current limit function by phase angle reduction must be lower or equal to product current rating.
- The current limit function by phase angle reduction is not available with Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC), Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.
- Duty cycle current limiting features (in burst mode), does not limit the peak current value. Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.
- With SWIR Load, if a fast response time is required, or if IHC firing mode has been selected, select SWIR (Infrared) as Heater type.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to 125% of MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, adjust the duration of the safety ramp (SafetyRamp), the cooling time of the load (SWIRLoadCoolingTime) and the value of SWIR Load Cooling Threshold, to limit the RMS load inrush current SWIR to less than 2.5 times the product current rating.
- This product does not contain any branch-circuit protection, the installer must add branch-circuit protection upstream of the unit.
- Branch circuit protection must be selected according to maximum current in each phase and must be rated in compliance with local and national regulatory requirements.
- Power connections: The cables must be rated 90°C stranded copper only, the cross section must be selected according to the branch circuit protection rating.
- For 4S load type WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction activated on product, the neutral cross-sectional area must be sized to carry up to (V3 x current limit setting).
- For 4S load type WITHOUT current limit by phase angle reduction activated on product, the cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor, must be sized to carry the maximum phase current.
- The cables used to connect the EPack's auxiliary supply and voltage reference must be protected by branch-circuit protection. Such branch-circuit protection must comply with local and national regulatory requirements.
- Connection of two conductors in the same terminal is not permitted, partial or total loss of connection may create an overheat of the terminals.
- The conductor stripping length must be as stated in electrical installation.
- Respect mechanical installation requirements to allow heatsink to dissipate power.
- At commissioning ensure that under maximum load condition, the ambient temperature of the product will not exceed the limit stated in that manual.
- Heat-sink must be cleaned regularly. Periodicity depends on the local environment, but should not exceed 1 year.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Do not use the product for critical control or protection applications where human or equipment safety relies on the operation of the control circuit.
- Signal and power voltage wiring must be kept separate from one another. Where this is impractical, all wires must be rated to the power voltage & shielded cables are recommended for signal wiring.
- This product has been designed for environment A (Industrial). Use of this product in environment B (domestic, commercial and light industrial) may cause unwanted electromagnetic disturbances in which cases the installer may be required to take adequate mitigation measures.
- For Electromagnetic Compatibility, panel or DIN rail to which product is attached must be grounded.
- Observe all electrostatic discharge precautions before handling the unit.
- At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.
- Ensure physical access to the product is restricted to authorized people only.
- At commissioning, ensure cybersecurity robustness of the installation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

HOT SURFACE RISK OF BURNS

- Allow heatsink to cool before servicing.
- Do not allow flammable or heat-sensitive parts in the immediate vicinity of heatsink.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

NOTICE

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- When ordering the product, select the appropriate communication protocol or make sure it is available as a software upgrade option.
- Non-volatile memory must not be accessed in write mode more than 10,000 times during the whole lifetime of the product.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-functional equipment.

NOTICE

NORTH AMERICA REGULATIONS

 For USA & Canada EPack 125A fuse holder terminal capacity is rated UL 1/0AWG, this may decrease the maximum Load current according to standard, ambient temperature, wiring arrangement.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-compliance to North America regulations.

Reasonable use and responsibility

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. While every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the information, your supplier shall not be held liable for errors contained herein.

EPack is an "AC semiconductor controller for non-motor loads" designed according to IEC60947-4-3 & UL60947-4-1, it meets the requirements of the Low voltage and EMC European Directives which covers safety and EMC aspects.

Use in other applications, or failure to observe the installation instructions of this manual may impair safety or EMC.

The safety and EMC of any system incorporating this product is the responsibility of the assembler/installer of the system.

Failure to use approved software/hardware with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results

Eurotherm shall not be held responsible for any damage, injury, losses or expenses caused by inappropriate use of the product (EPack), or failure to comply with these instructions.

SELV

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits. The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

The I/O connector (5-way) & auxiliary supply (24V ac/dc, 2-way) are compliant to the SELV requirements.

The alarm relay output and the fuse holder contacts are compliant with the SELV requirements; they can be connected to SELV or to voltage up to 230V (Rated insulation voltage U_i : 230V).

One or more of the symbols below may appear as a part of the instrument labeling.

	Protective conductor terminal		Risk of electric shock
\sim	AC supply only		Precautions against static electrical discharge must be taken when handling this unit.
	Underwriters laboratories listed mark, for Canada and the U.S.	\square	Refer to the manual for instructions
	Do not touch heatsink Hot Surface	CE	CE Mark. Indicates compliance with the appropriate European Directives and Standards
EAC	EAC (EurAsian Conformity) customs union mark of conformity	Ø	Regulatory Compliance Mark (RCM) to Australian Communication and Media Authority

Hazardous Substances

This product conforms to European <u>R</u>estriction <u>of</u> <u>H</u>azardous <u>S</u>ubstances (RoHS) (using exemptions) and <u>R</u>egistration, <u>E</u>valuation, <u>A</u>uthorisation and Restriction of <u>Ch</u>emicals (REACH) Legislation.

RoHS Exemptions used in this product involve the use of lead. China RoHS legislation does not include exemptions and so lead is declared as present in the China RoHS Declaration.

Californian law requires the following notice:

WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead compounds which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to: http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Cybersecurity

Introduction

When utilizing EPack controllers' range in an industrial environment, it is important to take 'cybersecurity' into consideration: in other words, the installation's design should aim to prevent unauthorized and malicious access. This includes both physical access (for instance via the front fascia), and electronic access (via network connections and digital communications).

WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Ensure physical access to the product is restricted to authorized people only.
- · At commissioning, ensure cybersecurity robustness of the installation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

To minimize any potential loss of control when communicating across a network via a third-party device (i.e. controller, PLC or configuration tool), ensure all system hardware, software and network design are correctly configured and commissioned for maximum cybersecurity robustness.

Cybersecurity Good Practices

Overall design of a site network is outside the scope of this manual. The Cybersecurity Good Practices Guide, Part Number HA032968 provides an overview of principles to consider. This is available from www.eurotherm.com.

Typically, an industrial controller such as the EPack power controller should not be placed on a network with direct access to the public Internet. Rather, good practise involves locating these devices on a firewalled network segment, separated from the public Internet by a so-called 'demilitarized zone' (DMZ).

Comms Port and Channel Enabled by Default

EPack controllers' range supports Ethernet connectivity by default (see Communications chapter), including the Bonjour[™] service discovery protocol. Bonjour[™] is an implementation of Zeroconf and it enables the controller to be automatically discovered by other devices on the network without the need for manual intervention. Bonjour[™] is released under a terms-of-limited-use license by Apple.

By default, the following comms ports are opened to traffic:

Р	ort	Service
5353	UDP	Zeroconf
502	ТСР	ModbusTCP (see note)

Note: ModbusTCP access is restricted until a default Comms Password has been entered. See "Network Communications" on page 56.

If Ethernet/IP option is enabled (not available on EtherCAT products), the following additional comms ports are opened to traffic:

Service	ort	Р
	UDP	2222
Ethernet-IP-2	UDP	22112
Ethernet-IP-2	TCP	44818
	UDP	44818

If PROFINET option is enabled,(not available on EtherCAT products), the following additional comms ports are opened to traffic:

Р	ort	Service
34964	UDP	Profinet-cm
49152	UDP	Profinet RPC mapper

Comms Port and Channel Disabled by Default

By default, the following comms ports are closed to traffic, but can be temporarily opened:

Port		Service
80	TCP	http
69	UDP	tftp

In addition, if DHCP mode is used (see "Communications" on page 75), the following port can be opened:

	Port	Service
68	UDP	bootp

Achilles[®] Communications Certification

The EPack series of Power Controllers have been certified to Level 1 under the Achilles[®] Communications Robustness Test Certification scheme. This is an established industry benchmark for the deployment of robust industrial devices recognized by the major automation vendors and operators.

Introduction

This document describes the installation, operation and configuration of a 3 phase EPack Power Controller. The unit includes the following analog and digital inputs and outputs, fitted as standard:

- Two digital inputs (contact closure or voltage level), of which one of the digital inputs can be configured as 10V user output.
- One analog input.
- One change-over relay under software control, configurable by the user.
- Also fitted are a pair of RJ45 Ethernet connectors for communications with a controlling PC or with other units.

Chapter Installation provides details on connector locations and pinouts.

The operator interface consists of a 1.44 inch square TFT display and four pushbuttons for navigation and data selection.

The 3 phase EPack comes in four versions with maximum load currents of: 32A, 63A, 100A and 125A.

The supply voltage for the units can be specified as either low voltage (24V ac/dc) or line voltage (85 to 550V ac). The choice is made at time of order and cannot be changed in the field.

Unpacking the Units

🕂 DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• If on receipt, the unit or any part within is damaged, do not install but contact your supplier.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The units are despatched in a special pack, designed to give adequate protection during transit. If any of the outer boxes show signs of damage, open them immediately and examine the instrument. If there is evidence of damage, do not operate the instrument and contact your local representative for instructions.

After the instrument has been removed from its packing, examine the packing to ensure that all accessories and documentation have been removed.

Store the packing for future transport requirements. Or please dispose of your packaging in a responsible and environmentally conscious manner. Where possible, reuse or recycle materials. Please ensure all disposal and recycling is undertaken in compliance with your local law and regulations.

EPack power controller is ordered using 'Basic product coding' for hardware and chargeable 'Software Upgrade Options'.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

 WITHOUT Current limit function by phase angle reduction, if SWIR (Infrared) is NOT selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

Calculate the MAXIMUM current of the load by taking account of load resistive tolerance, load resistive variation due to temperature (inrush current) and voltage tolerance.

For example:

WITHOUT Current limit function by phase angle reduction

Heater type: Resistive Voltage (U) tolerance: $\pm 10\% - 15\%$ Load resistance (R) tolerance: $\pm 5\%$ Load resistance (R) variation in temperature: $\pm 7\%$ I load maximum = Umax/Rmin = 1,1 x U / (R x 0.95 x 0.93) I load maximum = 1.25 x U / R = 1.25 x I charge nominal Product rating $\ge 1.25 \times I$ Load nominal

Current limit function by phase angle reduction may be selected to limit the inrush current of the load and reduce the current rating of the product.

HAZARD OF FIRE

- WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the nominal current of the load
- Setting of current limit function by phase angle reduction must be lower or equal to product current rating.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

For example:

WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction

Product rating ≥ I Load nominal Setting of current limit ≤ Product rating

HAZARD OF FIRE

- The current limit function by phase angle reduction is not available with Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC), Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.
- Duty cycle current limiting features (in burst mode), does not limit the peak current value. Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

Short-Wave Infrared Resistor (SWIR)

At cold start-up, Short-Wave Infrared Resistor (SWIR) load types have high inrush current up to 12 times the nominal current. Current limit function by phase angle reduction can be selected to limit the inrush current.

If a fast response time is required or if IHC firing mode has been selected, current limit function by phase angle reduction cannot be selected. Safety ramp (start in phase angle) must be activated by selecting SWIR as Heater type (select Infra-red for Heater in Quickcode).

If SWIR is selected as Heater type:

- Derating shall be applied to the current product rating. Calculate the MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load by taking account of voltage tolerance and load resistive tolerance WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current due to temperature. Select the product current rating greater than or equal to 125% of MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current.
- Adjust the safety ramp duration (SafetyRamp), the cooling time of the load (SWIRLoadCoolingTime), and the value of SWIR Load Cooling Threshold to limit the RMS load inrush current SWIR to less than 2.5 times the product current rating.

HAZARD OF FIRE

- With SWIR Load, if a fast response time is required, or if IHC firing mode has been selected, select SWIR (Infrared) as Heater type.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to 125% of MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, adjust the duration of the safety ramp (SafetyRamp), the cooling time of the load (SWIRLoadCoolingTime) and the value of SWIR Load Cooling Threshold, to limit the RMS load inrush current SWIR to less than 2.5 times the product current rating.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

High inrush current may overstress the fuse and/or the thyristor, the thyristor may break in short circuit. A faulty thyristor in short circuit may dissipate more power which may cause fire.

For example:

WITHOUT Current limit function by phase angle reduction:

Heater type: SWIR Voltage (U) tolerance +10% -15% Load resistance (R) tolerance ± 10% Load resistance (R) variation in temperature - 92% of nominal value (ratio R/Rcold =12) I load maximum (WITHOUT inrush) = Umax/Rmin = 1.1 x U / (R x 0.9) I load maximum (WITHOUT inrush) = 1.22 x I Load nominal Product rating ≥ 1.25 x 1.22 x I Load nominal Product rating ≥ 1.53 x I Load nom

NOTICE

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

When ordering the product, select the appropriate communication protocol or make sure it is available as a software upgrade option.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-functional equipment.

The PROFINET protocol and the EtherNet/IP protocol cannot be used together. Select one of the appropriate protocols among the different options.

PROFINET protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with Modbus TCP communication protocol and EtherNet/IP protocol.

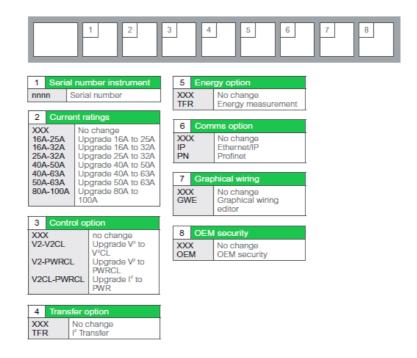
EtherNet/IP protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with Modbus TCP communication protocol and PROFINET protocol.

EPack supports the Modbus/TCP protocol. whatever the communication protocol is.

Basic Product Coding

EPACK-3		3	4 5 6	7	8 9 1		12 13
14	15 16 17	18	19 20	21	22 23 XXX		
Basic pro	Compact SCR Rewor	7 Con TCP IP PN	n <mark>ms option</mark> Modbus TCP (standard) EtherNet/IP PROFINET		nal configuration	19 Fir	ing mode
		PN	PROFINEI			PA	Phase angle
1 Max	timum current			nnnA	1 - Value field 1	IHC	Intelligent half cylcle
16A	16 amps		M security			BF	Variable modulation burst
25A	25 amps	XXX	None		minal line voltage		firing (default 16 cycles)
32A 40A	32 amps 40 amps	OEM	OEM security	100V 110V	100 volts 110 volts	FX	Fix modulation period (default 2 seconds)
50A	50 amps			110V 115V	110 volts	LGC	Logic mode
63A	63 amps		ranty	120V	120 volts		
80A	80 amps	XXXXX	Standard warranty	127V	127 volts	20 An	alog input function
100A 125A	100 amps 125 amps	WL005 USWL3	5 Year warranty US extended warranty	200V	200 volts	XX	
120A	125 amps	USWLS	03 extended warranty	208V 220V	208 volts 220 volts	SP	None - Setpoint via comms Setpoint
		40.0	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	230V	230 volts	HR	Setpoint limit
	illary power supply		tom labelling	240V	240 volts	IL.	Current limit
500V	500V max	XXXXXX	Standard (Eurotherm)	277V	277 volts	TS	Current transfer span
24V	24V ac/dc	Funnn	Special label	380V 400V	380 volts 400 volts		
		44 0	1 · · · · · ·	400V 415V	400 volts 415 volts	21 Ar	nalog input type
3 Res	erved	11 Gra	phical wiring	440V	440 volts	0V	0-10 volts
XXX	Reserved	XXX	None	460V	460 volts	1V	1-5 volts
		GWE	Graphical wiring editor (standard)	480V 500V	480 volts 500 volts	2V 5V	2-10 volts 0-5 volts
4 Con	trol option		(standard)	5000	500 Volts		0-20 mA
V2CL	V ² with current limitation	12 Fus			1	4A	4-20mA
	by threshold (standard)				ad configuration		
12	1 ² control	XXX HSP	Without fuse High speed fuse	35	Star without neutral	22 Di	gital input 2 function
V2 PWRCL	V ² control Power control with current	пар	without microswitch	3D 4S	Delta Star with neutral	XX	None
FWRGE	limit	HSM	High speed fuse	6D	Open delta	LG	Setpoint for logic mode
			with microswitch	-		AK	Alarm acknowledgement
	e			17 Los	nd type	RS FB	Remote setpoint selection Fuse blown
	nsfer option	13 Cor	figuration	XX	Resistive	SU	10V supply
XXX	No transfer	XXXXXXX	Default	TR	Transformer primary	100	
TFR	l ² transfer	LC	Long code		,	23 Re	eserved
		EEnnn	Customer clone number	18 Hea	ater type		
	rgy option					XXX	Reserved
XXX	None			XX MOSI	Resistive Molybdenum disilicide		
EMS	Energy measurement			CSI	Silicon carbide		
				SWIR	Short wave infra-red		
						1	

Software Upgrade Options



NOTICE

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• When ordering the product, select the appropriate communication protocol or make sure it is available as a software upgrade option.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-functional equipment.

The PROFINET protocol and the EtherNet/IP protocol cannot be used together. Select one of the appropriate protocols among the different options.

PROFINET protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with Modbus TCP communication protocol and EtherNet/IP protocol.

EtherNet/IP protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with Modbus TCP communication protocol and PROFINET protocol.

EPack supports the Modbus/TCP protocol. whatever the communication protocol is.

Installation

Mechanical Installation

Mounting details

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See applicable national standards e.g. NFPA70E, CSA Z462, BS 7671, NFC 18-510.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- If on receipt, the unit or any part within is damaged, do not install but contact your supplier.
- Do not disassemble, repair or modify the equipment. Contact your supplier for repair.
- This product must be installed, connected and used in compliance with prevailing standards and/or installation regulations.
- Do not exceed the device's ratings.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• The unit must be installed in an enclosure or cabinet connected to the protective earth ground.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Notes:

- 1. CE: protective earth ground minimum size must be selected according to IEC 60364-5-54 table 54.2 or IEC61439-1 table 5 or applicable national standards.
- 2. U.L.: protective earth ground minimum size must be selected according to NEC table 250.122 or NFPA79 table 8.2.2.3 or applicable national standards.

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the product is mounted.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Notes:

- 1. The product has been designed for pollution degree 2 according to IEC60947-1 definition: Normally, only non-conductive pollution occurs. Occasionally, however, a temporary conductivity caused by condensation may be expected.
- Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the product is mounted. To ensure a suitable atmosphere in conditions of conductive pollution, fit adequate air conditioning/filtering/cooling equipment to the air intake of the cabinet, e.g. fitting fan-cooled cabinets with a fan failure detection device or a thermal safety cut-out.

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Do not allow anything to fall through the case apertures and ingress the product.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Note: Conductive or non-conductive parts which ingress the product may reduce or short circuit the insulation barriers inside the product.

WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• Observe all electrostatic discharge precautions before handling the unit.

<u>/!\</u>

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

Mechanical installation requirements

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

Respect mechanical installation requirements to allow heatsink to dissipate power.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

Notes:

- 1. The product is designed to be mounted vertically.
- 2. There must be no obstructions (above or below) which could reduce or hamper airflow.

- 3. If more than one instance of the product is in the same cabinet, they must be mounted in such a way that air from one unit is not drawn into another.
- 4. The gap between two EPack devices must be at minimum 10mm.
- 5. The gap between EPack and cable tray must be at least those defined in the table in Mounted clearance dimensions.

HAZARD OF FIRE

• At commissioning ensure that under maximum load condition, the ambient temperature of the product will not exceed the limit stated in that manual.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

Notes:

- EPack has been designed for a maximum temperature of 45°C (113°F) at 1000m (3281ft) altitude at nominal current & 40°C (104°F) at 2000m (6562ft) altitude at nominal current.
- 2. At commissioning ensure that the ambient temperature inside the cabinet does not exceed the limit under maximum load condition.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

 Heat-sink must be cleaned regularly. Periodicity depends on the local environment, but should not exceed 1 year.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

HOT SURFACE RISK OF BURNS

 Do not allow flammable or heat-sensitive parts in the immediate vicinity of heatsink.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

Mounted clearance dimensions

Phase:	3 phase					
Amps:	16 - 32A	40 - 63A	80 - 100A	125A		
EPack clearance dimensions mm (inches):						
between cable tray and EPack	70 (2.76)	100 (3.94)	150 (5.91)	150 (5.91)		
between two cable trays	306 (12.05)	366 (14.41)	530 (20.87)	530 (20.87)		
between or side by side another EPack	10 (.39)	10 (.39)	10 (.39)	10 (.39)		

Figures 4 to 7 show dimensions for the various units.

The units are designed for DIN Rail or bulkhead mounting using the mounting fixings supplied.

Bulkhead Mounting

32A and 63A Units

For Bulkhead mounting, fit the upper bracket 'A' to the rear of the unit by removing screw 'B' x2 and associated shakeproof washers, offering the bracket up to the unit, and then securing it by installing x2 screw 'B' ensuring that the bracket is correctly oriented (as shown) and that the shakeproof washers are fitted between the screw head and the bracket.

Use a screwdriver with a 3mm AF hexagonal bit. The recommended tightening torque is 1.5 Nm (1.1 lb-ft). To mount, secure using x2 M5 screws and shakeproof washers using the top and bottom mount points.

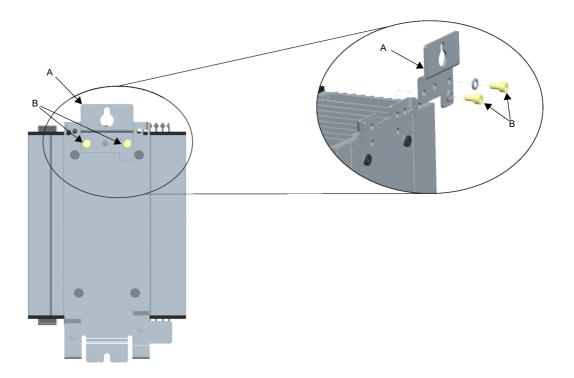


Figure 1 Fitting upper bulkhead mounting bracket (32A unit shown; 63A units similar)

80A, 100A and 125A Units

For bulkhead mounting, brackets 'A' and 'B' on the rear of the unit are used to mount the product. Secure using x3 M6 screws and shakeproof washers using the top and bottom mount points.

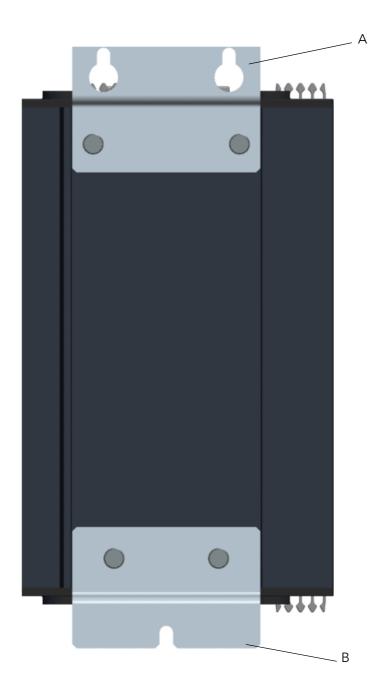
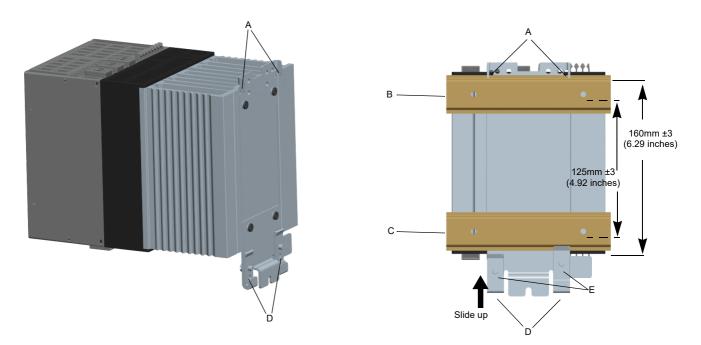


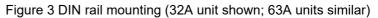
Figure 2 Bulkhead mounting 80A/100A unit shown (125A similar)

DIN Rail Mounting

32A and 63A Units

The 32A and 63A units can be mounted using two horizontal, parallel, 7.5mm or 15mm DIN rails. Locate the upper mounting hooks 'A' (×2) on the upper DIN rail 'B'. To secure the unit against the lower DIN rail 'C', slide the lower mounting catches 'D' (×2) upwards and tighten the mounting screws 'E' (x2) to the recommended tightening torque of 3Nm (2.2lb ft).





80A, 100A and 125A Units

The higher power units cannot be mounted using any type of DIN rail configuration due to the size and relative mass.

See "Bulkhead Mounting" on page 31 for further details.

16A to 32A unit dimensions

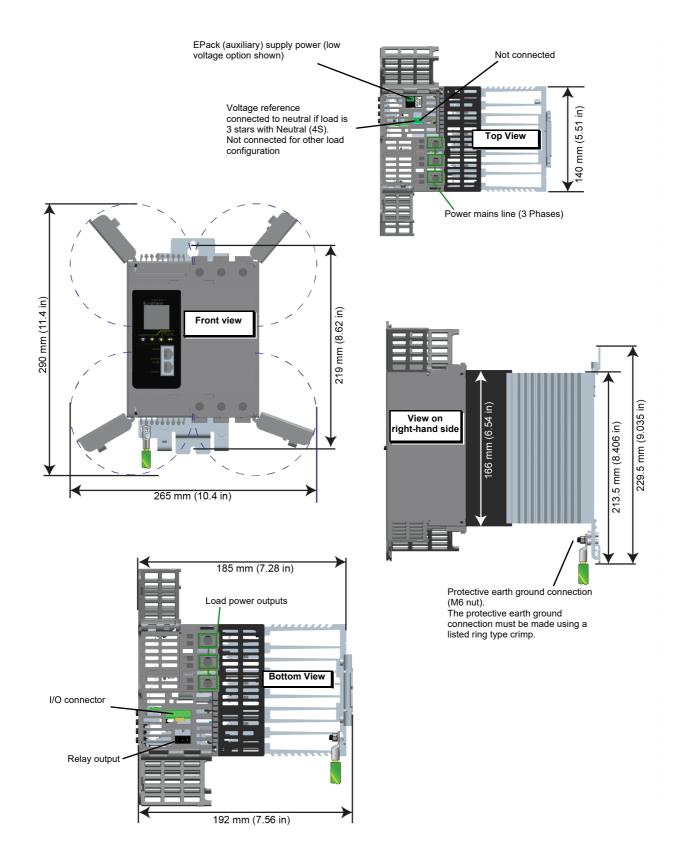


Figure 4 Mechanical installation details (16A to 32A units)

40A to 63A unit dimensions

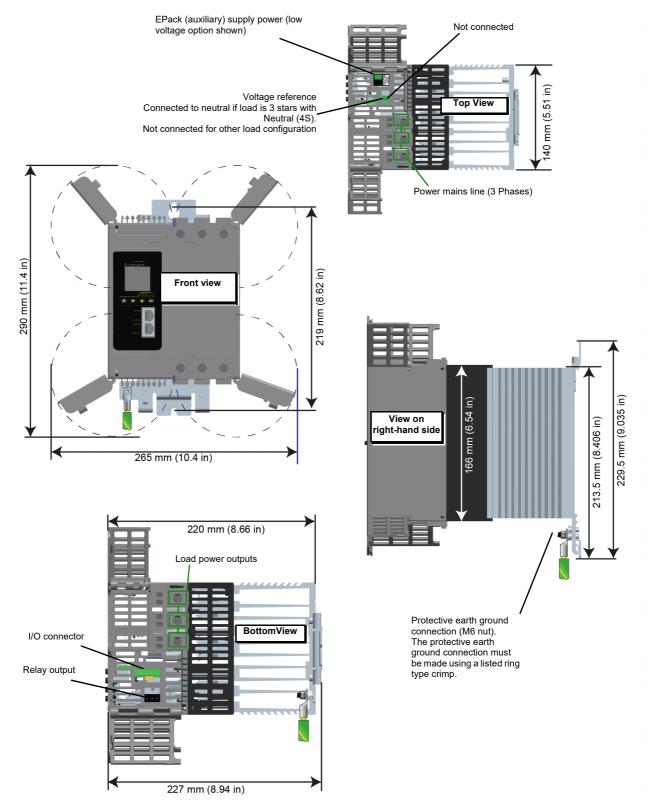


Figure 5 Mechanical installation details (40A to 63A units)

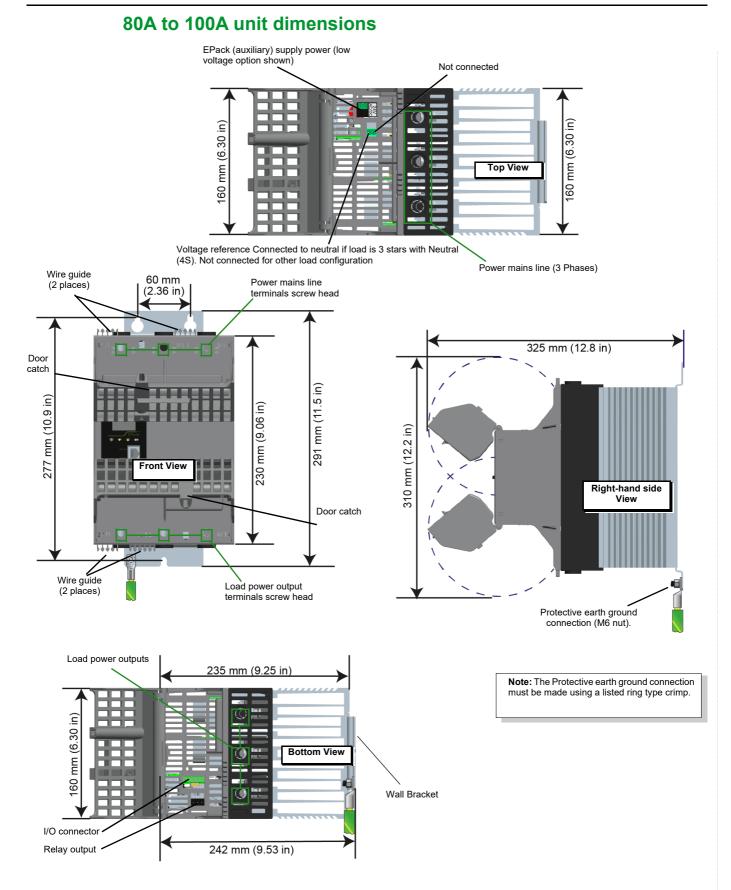


Figure 6 Mechanical installation details (80A to 100A units) (doors open).

125A unit dimensions

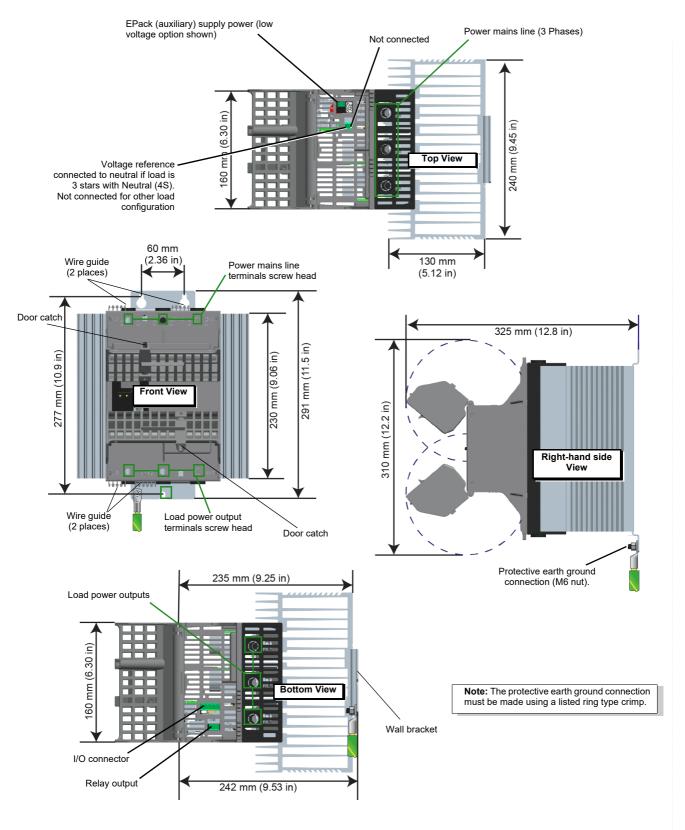


Figure 7 Mechanical installation details (125A units) (Doors open).

Phase	3 phase			
Amps:	16 - 32A	40 - 63A	80 - 100A	125A
Dimensions mm (inches)				
Height	166 (6.535)	166 (6.535)	230 (9.055)	230 (9.055)
with Double DIN Rail	213.5 (8.405)	213.5 (8.405)	N/A ¹	N/A ¹
with Wall back plate	229.5 (9.035)	229.5 (9.035)	291 (11.456)	291 (11.456)
Doors open	290 (11.417)	290 (11.417)	310 (12.204)	310 (12.204)
Depth	185 (7.283)	220 (8.661)	235 (9.251)	235 (9.251)
with Wall back plate	192 (7.559)	227 (8.937)	242 (9.527)	242 (9.527)
with doors open	N/A ²	N/A ²	325 (12.795)	325 (12.795)
Width	140 (5.511)	140 (5.511)	160 (6.299)	240 (9.448)
with doors open	265 (10.433)	265 (10.433)	N/A ³	N/A ³
Wall mount fixings Distance apart:				
Medium mount	219 (8.622)	219 (8.622)	-	-
Large mount	-	-	277 (10.905)	277 (10.905)
Double DIN Rails	125 ±3 (4.921 ±0.12)	125 ±3 (4.921 ±0.12)	-	-
Distance between top, two mounting fixings:				
Large mount	-	-	60 (2.362)	60 (2.362)
HeatSink Depth	55 (2.165)	90 (3.543)	97 (3.818)	130 (5.118)

Summary - all units (16A - 125A)

1. Not applicable, double DIN rail option not available.

2. Not applicable, doors open sideways increasing only the width.

3. Not applicable, doors open vertically (up or down) towards the center of the product increasing only the depth.

Electrical Installation

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See applicable national standards e.g. NFPA70E, CSA Z462, BS 7671, NFC 18-510.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- If on receipt, the unit or any part within is damaged, do not install but contact your supplier.
- Do not disassemble, repair or modify the equipment. Contact your supplier for repair.
- This product must be installed, connected and used in compliance with prevailing standards and/or installation regulations.
- Do not exceed the device's ratings.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 Do not allow anything to fall through the case apertures and ingress the product.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Note: Conductive or non-conductive parts which ingress product may reduce or short the insulations barriers inside the product.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 Ensure all cables and wiring harness are secured using a relevant strain relief mechanism.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Note: Wires may slip out of the terminals.

EPack

MARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Observe all electrostatic discharge precautions before handling the unit.
- Signal and power voltage wiring must be kept separate from one another. Where this is impractical, all wires must be rated to the power voltage & shielded cables are recommended for signal wiring.
- For Electromagnetic Compatibility, panel or DIN rail to which product is attached must be grounded.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

Connection Details

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Before any other connection is made, the protective earth ground terminal must be connected to a protective conductor.
- Protective conductor must be sized in compliance with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The earth connection must be made by using a lug terminal of size as given in Table 1, "Connection Details". The cables must be rated 90°C stranded copper only.

- CE: The protective earth ground cable minimum size must be selected according to IEC 60364-5-54 table 54.2 or IEC61439-1 table 5 or applicable national standards. The protective earth ground connection must be made to the unit with a ring type crimp terminal, using the nut and shakeproof washer supplied (M6 for 16A to 125A units).
- U.L.: The protective earth ground cable cross sectional area should be selected according to NEC table 250.122 or NFPA79 table 8.2.2.3 or applicable national standards. The protective earth ground connection must be made to the unit with a U.L. listed ring type crimp terminal, using the nut and shakeproof washer supplied (M6 for 16A to 125A units).

<u>î</u> DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

 Power connections: The cables must be rated 90°C stranded copper only, the cross section must be selected according to the branch circuit protection rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

CE: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with IEC 60364-5-52 or applicable national standards.

U.L.: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with NEC Table 310.15(B)(16) (formerly Table 310.16) taking account of table 310.15(B)(2) for the ampacity correction factors or NFPA79 Table 12.5.1 taking account of Table 12.5.5(a) for the ampacity correction factors or applicable national standards.

Table 1, "Connection Details" gives details of tightening torques for the various supply power and signal wiring connections.

Terminals	Product Rating	Terminal Capacity ¹		Wire Type	Torque	Comments
	Rating	mm ²	AWG			
Supply voltage (1/L1, 3/L2, 5/L3) and Load supply (2/T1, 4/T2, 6/T3)	16A to 63A	1.5mm ² to 25mm ²	AWG 14 to AWG 4	Stranded copper Rated 90°C (194°F)	2Nm (18lb in)	PZ2 or Flat-bladed screwdriver 5.5 x 1.0mm (7/32in x 0.039in) or 6.5 x 1.2mm (1/4in x 0.047in)
	80A to 125A	10mm ² to 50mm ²	AWG 8 to AWG 2/0		5.6Nm (50lb in)	Flat-bladed screwdriver 5.5 x 1mm (7/32in x 0.039in) or 6.5 x 1.2mm (1/4in x 0.047in)
Protective earth ground	16A to 63A	M6 ring-typ terminal	e crimp		2.5Nm (22lb in)	U.L.: Listed ring-type crimp terminal must be used
	80A to 125A	M6 ring-typ terminal	e crimp		5.6Nm (50lb in)	U.L.: Listed ring-type crimp terminal must be used
Voltage Reference (Vref) (2-way/1 connected) Supply (24Vac/dc) (2-way) Supply (85V-550Vac)(3-way) I/O connector (5-way) Relay connector (3-way)	All	0.25mm ² to 2.5mm ²	AWG 24 to AWG 12	Stranded copper Rated 75°C (167°F)	0.56Nm (5lb in)	Flat-bladed screwdriver 3.5 x 0.6mm (1/8in x 0.0236in)

	Table 1:	Connection	Details
--	----------	------------	---------

1. AWG (American Wire Gauge) for USA and Canada (according to cUL standard); section in mm² for IEC countries (according to IEC/EN standard).

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Tighten all connections in conformance with the torque specifications. Periodic inspections are required.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

See Table 1, "Connection Details".

Wires are not properly retained in terminals with insufficient torque.

Insufficient torque may increase the contact resistance:

- The protective earth ground connection may be too resistive. In case of short circuit between live parts and heatsink, the heatsink may reach a dangerous voltage.
- The power terminals will overheat.

Excessive torque may damage the terminal.

HAZARD OF FIRE

Connection of two conductors in the same terminal is not permitted.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Partial or total loss of connection as a result of attempting to connect two or more conductors in the same terminal results in an overheat of the terminals.

See Table 1, "Connection Details".

NOTICE

NORTH AMERICA REGULATIONS

 For USA & Canada EPack 125A fuse holder terminal capacity is rated UL 1/0AWG, this may decrease the maximum Load current according to standard, ambient temperature, wiring arrangement.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-compliance to North America regulations.

For compliance with;

• UL508A (Industrial Control Panels) the continuous load shall not exceed 120A.

Note: As per UL508A, an ambient temperature of 40°C is assigned to all cabinet, cable stranded copper rated 90°C.

- NFPA79 (Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery) full load current shall not exceed:
 - 125A at 35°C ambient temperature
 - 120A at 40°C ambient temperature
 - 115A at 45°C ambient temperature.

Note: According to NFPA79 sub article 12.5.2, NFPA70 (NEC) article 310.15 may be used to size conductor rated 90°C. Higher full load current may be achieved with NFPA70 (NEC) see below.

 NFPA 70 (NEC: National electric code), continuous load may be limited according to ambient temperature of the cabinet and wiring arrangement.

Note: Single-Insulated Conductors and NEC Table 310.15(B)(17) (formerly Table 310.17) may be use for continuous load up to 125A at 45°C.

Auxiliary supply

The auxiliary supply connections (to operate the product) are terminated using a 2-way (24V ac/dc version) or 3-way (85 to 550Vac version) connector, located on the upper side of the unit, as shown in Figure 8 and Figure 9.

24V ac/dc auxiliary supply

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

The cables used to connect the EPack's auxiliary supply and voltage reference must be protected by branch-circuit protection. Such branch-circuit protection must comply with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

- CE: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to IEC 60364-4-43 or applicable local regulations.
- UL: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to NEC article 210.20, it is necessary for compliance with National Electric Code (NEC) requirements.

\land DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• The "24V auxiliary supply" is an SELV circuit. The supply Voltage must be derived from a SELV or PELV circuit.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits.

The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

85 to 550Vac auxiliary supply

DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

• The cables used to connect the EPack's auxiliary supply and voltage reference must be protected by branch-circuit protection. Such branch-circuit protection must comply with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Branch circuit protection is mandatory to protect the cable used to connect the auxiliary supply.

- CE: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to IEC 60364-4-43 or applicable local regulations.
- UL: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to NEC article 210.20, it is necessary for compliance with National Electric Code (NEC) requirements.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 A High-speed fuse (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device) or a double protection fuse as listed in "Auxiliary supply fuse protection" on page 246 is mandatory for 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

This fuse is necessary to avoid the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply to emit flame or molten element in case of breakdown of a component.

High-speed fuse (supplemental fuse) does not protect the wiring, they must be fitted (**in addition to branch circuit protective device**).

Double protection fuse comprises a branch circuit fuse and a high-speed fuse.

Double protection fuses must be selected according to applicable national standards

Branch circuit protection fuses standards in USA/Canada differ from IEC standards (e.g; Europe (CE)). Therefore:

- A fuse approved as branch circuit protection fuses in USA/Canada is not a branch circuit in all countries where IEC standards apply (e.g; Europe (CE)).
- A fuse approved as branch circuit protection fuses in all countries where IEC standards apply (e.g; Europe (CE)) is not a branch circuit in USA/Canada.

See tables in "Auxiliary supply fuse protection" on page 246.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 If opening of any fuses or branch circuit protection device that supply the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply occurs, first check the wiring. If the wiring is not damaged, do not replace the fuse and contact the manufacturer's local service center.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the wiring is not damaged a component inside the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply is broken and product must go back to service center.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• The maximum voltage between any pole of the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply and all other terminals must be lower than 550Vac.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply is supplied by a dedicated transformer the phasing must be checked to avoid overvoltage.

Connections (Supply Power and Load)

HAZARD OF FIRE

- This product does not contain any branch-circuit protection, therefore the installer must add branch-circuit protection upstream of the unit.
- Branch circuit protection must be selected according to maximum current in each phase and must be rated in compliance with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Branch circuit protection is mandatory to protect the wiring.

- CE: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to IEC 60364-4-43 or applicable local regulations.
- UL: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to NEC article 210.20, it is necessary for compliance with National Electric Code (NEC) requirements.

HAZARD OF FIRE

 Power connections: The cables must be rated 90°C stranded copper only, the cross section must be selected according to the branch circuit protection rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

CE: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with IEC 60364-5-52 or applicable national standards

U.L.: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with NEC Table 310.15(B)(16) (formerly Table 310.16) taking account of table 310.15(B)(2) for the ampacity correction factors or NFPA79 Table 12.5.1 taking account of Table 12.5.5(a) for the ampacity correction factors or applicable national standards.

1 DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

For 4S load type, WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction activated on product, the neutral cross-sectional area must be sized to carry up to ($V3 \times current$ limit setting).

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

For high coefficient temperature resistive load, Current limit function by phase angle reduction may be selected to limit the inrush current of the load and downsized the rating of the product.

With this features the current in each line is limited to the current limit setting and the current in neutral can reach up to ($\sqrt{3}$ x current limit setting).

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

 For 4S load type WITHOUT current limit by phase angle reduction activated on product, the cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor, must be sized to carry the maximum phase current.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Calculate the maximum current of the load by taking account of load resistive tolerance (tolerance and variation due to temperature) and voltage tolerance.

A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- High speed fuses (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device), as listed in fusing sections, are mandatory to protect EPack against load short circuit.
- If opening of either the branch circuit protective device or the high-speed fuses (supplemental fuses) occurs, the product must be examined by suitably qualified personnel and replaced if damaged.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

See tables in "Fusing" on page 239.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

Respect electrical installation requirements to ensure optimum IP rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Products are rated IP20 according to EN60529.

If the conductor stripping lengths of the power cables are longer than the requirements, then IP20 is compromised.

If the conductor stripping lengths of the power cables are shorter than the requirements there is a potential risk of total loss of connection. Wires may slip out of the terminals.

If the plastic knockouts are removed, and cables with diameters lower than 9mm are used, then IP20 rating is compromised and the product is rated at IP10.

HAZARD OF FIRE

• The conductor stripping length must be as stated in Electrical Installation.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the conductor stripping lengths of the power cables are shorter than the requirements there is a potential risk of partial loss of connection which may create an overheat of the terminals.

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Close doors and plug-in terminals before turning on power to this equipment.
- Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the upper and/or lower access door are open, then IP20 rating is compromised and the products are rated at IP10.

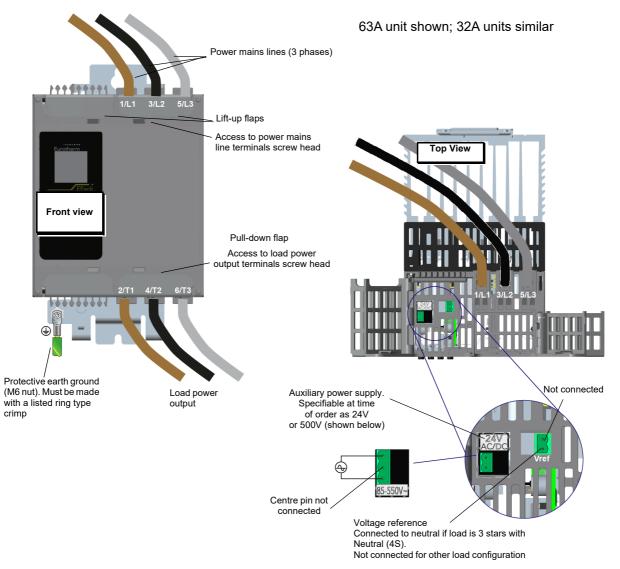


Figure 8 Supply power and Load connection details (16A to 63A units)

80A, 100A and 125A units

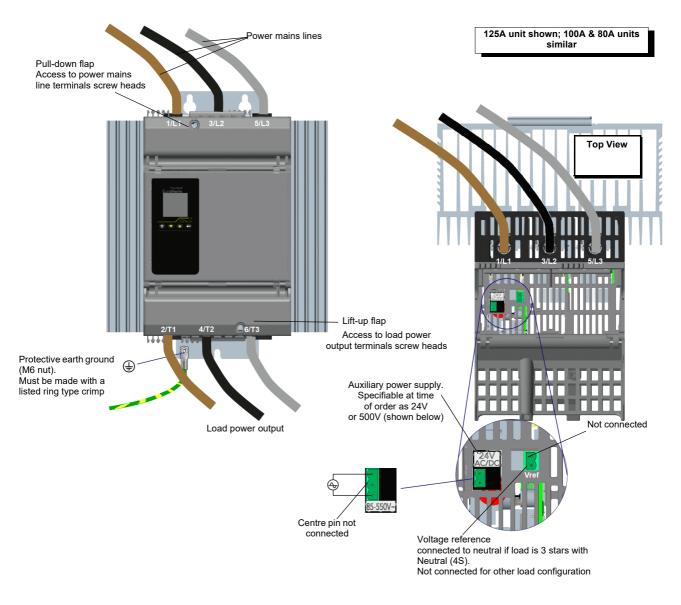


Figure 9 Supply power and Load connection details (80A to 125A units) (125A displayed).

See Figure 8 or Figure 9 for basic wiring details.

EPack rating (Amps)	Exposed conductor length mm (inch)	Remove terminal housing plastic knockout? mm (inch) cable diameter	Cable diameter maximum mm (inch)
16A to 63A	20 - 23 (0.79 - 0.91)	Yes, for cables greater than 9 (0.35)	10.5 (0.41)
80A to 125A	20 - 23 (0.79 - 0.91)	Yes, for cables greater than 9 (0.35)	17.5 (0.69)

Table 2: EPack 3PH cable connection specification

Load Configurations

Delta

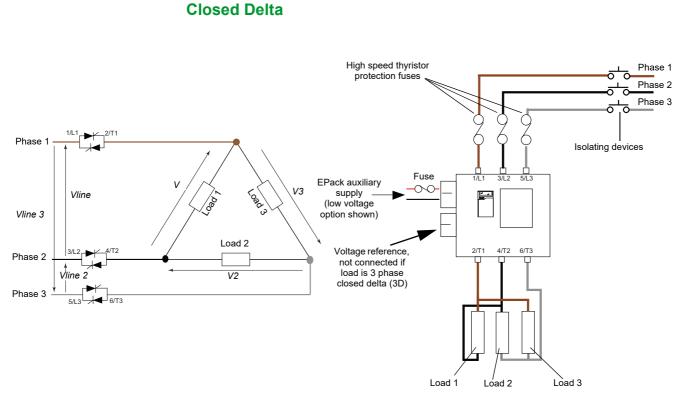
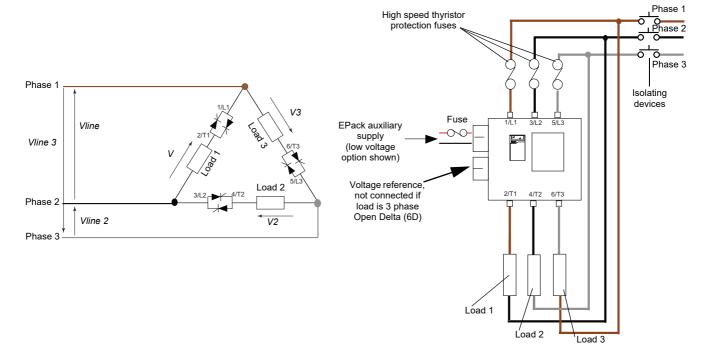


Figure 10 3 phase Closed Delta wiring scheme/load configuration



Open Delta

Figure 11 3 phase Open Delta wiring scheme/load configuration

HA033541 Issue 02

EPack

Star with Neutral

CE: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with IEC 60364-5-52 or applicable national standards.

U.L.: Wire conductor cross sections must comply with NEC Table 310.15(B)(16) (formerly Table 310.16) taking account of table 310.15(B)(2) for the ampacity correction factors or NFPA79 Table 12.5.1 taking account of Table 12.5.5(a) for the amperage correction factors or applicable national standards.

HAZARD OF FIRE

For 4S load type WITHOUT current limit by phase angle reduction activated on product, the cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor, must be sized to carry the maximum phase current.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Calculate the maximum current of the load by taking account of load resistive tolerance (tolerance and variation due to temperature) and voltage tolerance.

HAZARD OF FIRE

 For 4S load type, WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction activated on product, the neutral cross-sectional area must be sized to carry up to (V3 x current limit setting).

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

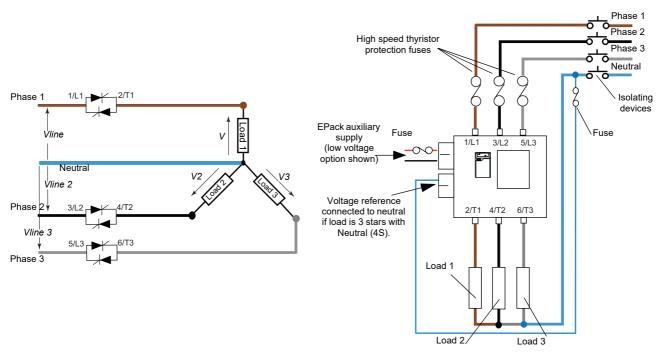
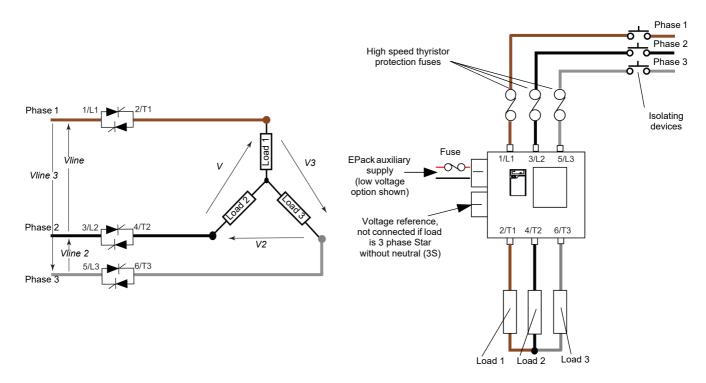


Figure 12 3 phase Star with Neutral wiring scheme/load configuration

Star without Neutral





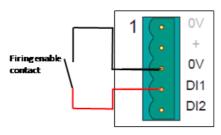
Signal wiring

Figure 14 shows the connector location, on the underside of the unit, for the digital and analog inputs, and for the internal relay output.

Firing Enable

For the power module thyristors to operate, the Firing Enable must be enabled.

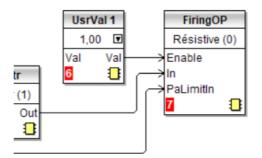
In the default configuration Digital input 1 is used to enable the firing and is configured in contact closure type. Therefore, Firing Enable is achieved by shorting pins 0V and DI1 of the I/O connector located on the underside of the unit (Digital input 1).



QuickCode menu allows the user to select Digital input 2 to Enable Firing. Digital input 2 is configured in contact closure type, therefore, Firing Enable is achieved by shorting pins 0V and DI2 of the I/O connector located on the underside of the unit (Digital input 2).

If none of them have been selected as firing enable function in the QuickCode menu therefore userval1 function block will be connected to the firing enable input of the firingOP function block.

Userval1 function block will be set to 1 which will enable the firing.



Alarm Acknowledge

In the default configuration, shorting pins 0V and DI2 of the I/O connector located on the underside of the unit (Digital input 2) acknowledges alarms. This can be done also using DI1.

DI can be configured as a voltage input (if required), and in this case it requires a high signal to be applied to DI with the relevant zero voltage connected to 0V.

Main Setpoint

In the default configuration, the analog input sets the main setpoint.

Relay Output

The relay is normally energized (Common and Normally Open pins shorted), and is de-energized (Common and Normally Closed pins shorted) when active. In the default configuration, the relay output is operated by the Fault detect 'Custom Alarm' becoming active.

By default, the Custom alarm is set up to be equivalent to 'AnySystemAlarm' which becomes active if any 'stop firing' conditions, such as those listed below, is detected.

- 1. Missing mains. Supply voltage line is missing.
- 2. Thyristor short circuit^a
- Network dips. A reduction in supply voltage exceeding a configurable value (VdipsThreshold), causes firing to be inhibited until the supply voltage returns to a suitable value. VdipsThreshold represents a percentage change in supply voltage between successive half cycles.
- 4. Freq out of range. The supply frequency is checked every half cycle, and if the percentage change between successive half cycles exceeds a threshold value (max. 5%), a Mains Frequency System Alarm is generated.
- 5. Chop Off (page 233).
- 6. Analog input over current. For mA inputs this alarm is active if there is too high a current flowing through the shunt.

The relay is de-energized temporarily then re-energized at start-up. As the relay is wired in positive security, any auxiliary power supply failure will de-energize the relay.

In configuration mode, it is also possible to configure the relay using the Alarm Relay menu in the Operator Interface (page 61).

a. It is not possible to detect a thyristor short circuit when the unit is delivering 100% output power.

I/O Input & Output Details

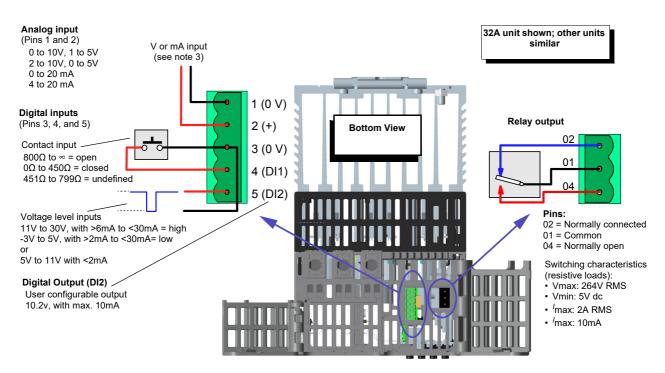


Figure 14 I/O details

Notes:

1. Diagram shows DI1 as a contact input and DI2 as a voltage level input.

- 2. DI1 can be configured as contact inputs or voltage inputs.
- 3. DI2 can be configured as contact inputs or voltage inputs or 10.2V output (with max. 10mA).
- 4. Analog input type (Volts or mA) is selected in I/O Analog IP configuration. When a mA range is selected, a suitable shunt resistor is automatically connected into circuit. It is thus unnecessary for the user to fit external components.

🕂 DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Do not exceed the device's ratings.
- The I/O Input & Output, the Communications ports are SELV circuit. They
 must be connected to SELV or PELV circuit.
- The relay output and the fuse holders contacts are compliant to the SELV requirements; they can be connected to SELV, PELV circuit or to voltage up to 230V (maximum value of rated operational voltage to earth:230V).

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits.

The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

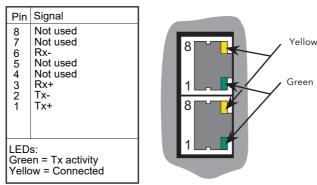
Network Communications

Ethernet Wiring

An Ethernet networking capability is provided by a pair of RJ45 connectors, located at the front of the EPack power controller unit.

Communications Pinouts

Each connector has a pair of LED indicators to indicate network connection (amber LED) and network Tx activity (flashing green).



The connection is 10/100 base T, autosensing.

Figure 15 EPack Pinouts

Communications startup

EPack configuration over communication channel is protected by a password called 'Comms Password'. This password shall be provided each time config mode is to be entered from Comms.

Full communication is disabled by default until a proper Comms Password is defined. This can be done via two means: from product front fascia or from iTools.

Enabling full communication from front fascia

When an Ethernet cable is connected, Comms Password page is displayed. A six-digit random numeric password is generated and obscured by default:



Keep pushing 🔤 button to display in clear text, then memorize this password.



After releasing 🖾 button, push 💟 button within one second to validate this password. If the password is difficult to memorize, a new one can be generated by disconnecting and reconnecting Ethernet cable.

Notes:

- 1. Comms Password shall never be written down! It is therefore recommended to change it to a user-chosen one as soon as possible using iTools.
- 2. Once Comms Password has been set, product behaves as follows when an Ethernet cable is connected:
 - If product in is Operator or Engineer mode, it is no longer possible to enter config mode from front fascia until cable is disconnected. Config mode can still be entered from comms, provided the correct Comms Password is provided.
 - If Config mode has been entered from front fascia (that is, before Ethernet cable is connected), communication is restricted until Comms Password is provided via Comms or Config mode exited.

Enabling full communication from iTools

This can be done in two ways:

1. The user selects the "Add Devices" (using the "Add" button), the device will display a padlock icon to the left of the device description.

lect Devices to Add:			Select A
evice	Device Type	IPv4	Description
B ID255-EPC3008@192-168-111-222	EPC3008 5.03	192.168.111.222	MODBUS_EPC30xx[000A8

If they select to add the device, iTools will display a message informing them that they need to configure the Comms Configuration password before being able to proceed.

Warning		×
	The comms configuration password has not yet been set. Would you like to configure the comms configuration password now?	
	The device will not control while its Access Level is set to Configuration.	
	It is recommended that the device be disconnected from any active process	
	Yes No	

IP Address	
192.168.111.201	
	192.168.111.201 EPack.608[0x0009FBF1] 192.168.111.222 EPC3008 503[0x14320000]

Selecting 'Yes' will automatically launch the iDevPWSetup tool.

2. The user chooses to perform a network "Scan", on detecting the device, iTools will display a message:

Warning	×
	The comms configuration password has not yet been set.
	Would you like to configure the comms configuration password now?
	The device will not control while its Access Level is set to Configuration.
	It is recommended that the device be disconnected from any active process.
	Yes No

informing the user that they need to configure the Comms Configuration password before being able to proceed. Selecting 'Yes' will automatically launch the iDevPWSetup tool.

iTools Device Password Manager	×
Please set the device's communications configuration password. Minimum allowable password length is 8 characters, and should contain at least 2 of the following: - uppercase letters (A through 2) - lowercase letters (A through 1) - numeric digits (D through 9) - special characters (such as I, \$, # %)	Unconfigured devices - please select to configure IP Address Device 192.168.111.201 EPack 608 [0x0009FBF1] 192.168.111.222 EPC3008 503 [0x14320000]
PasswordShow ConfirmShow Password does not meet minimum recommended requirements. Not long enough, and not enough - Numeric - Uppercase - Lowercase - Special Characters Apply to selected devices	

Note the following:

- The Comms Password is required to be at least eight characters in length
- It is required that the password uses two out of the four following character types:
 - UPPER CASE [A-Z]
 - lower case [a-z]
 - numeric [0-9]
 - special characters [! \$ # %, etc]

The Comms Password can be changed at any time assuming current Comms Password is provided (see "Access menu" on page 138).

Fuse Holders Contact Data (Fuse Ordering Code HSM)

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Do not exceed the device's ratings.
- The relay output and the fuse holders contacts are compliant to the SELV requirements; they can be connected to SELV, PELV circuit or to voltage up to 230V (maximum value of rated operational voltage to earth:230V).

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits.

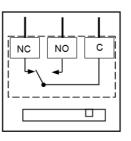
The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

If fuse ordering code HSM has been selected, the fuses holder is delivered with contact kits which provide indication if fuses are blown or missing. This is shown locally on the fuseholder by a red handle which also activates microcontacts. These contacts may be wired to a digital input on the EPack as shown in the following diagrams.

Fuses Holders Contacts Kit are delivered with NO, NC contact.

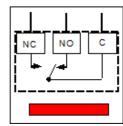
Fuse in fuse holder and not blown

The handle and contacts are in the closed state



Fuse missing or fuse blown

The handle is open and shown red. The contacts are in open state



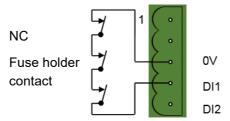
- Connection: Faston lugs 2.8 x 0.5mm (0.11 x 0.02in)
- Rated insulation voltage: 250VAC
- Rated operational current following IEC 60947-5 & -1
- Utilization category AC15: 4A/24V, 4A/48V, 3A/127V, 2.5A/240V
- Utilization category DC13: 3A/24V, 1A/48V, 0.2A/127V, 0.1A/240V

For contact kit reference according to product rating see Table 8 or Table 9.

Contact kit Mersen Y227928A, for fuse size 14x51 or Contact kit Mersen G227959A for fuse size 22x58.

Minimum operational current and voltage: 1mA/4V AC or DC.

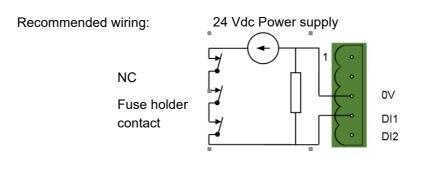
 These contacts are compatible with Digital inputs configured in contact closure mode. Recommended wiring:



For contact kit Mersen E227612A, for fuse size 27x60

Minimum operational current and voltage: 100mA/20V AC or DC

- These contacts are not compatible with Digital inputs configured in contact closure mode.
- These contacts are compatible with Digital inputs configured in Voltage inputs with external dc power supply and load 100 mA dc minimum.



Operator Interface

Located at the front of the Driver Module, the operator interface consists of a square display, and four pushbutton switches.

Display

The display is divided vertically into three areas, which for the purposes of this manual are called the status area at the top, the data display, in the center, and the soft keys at the bottom. This display, together with the four pushbuttons allows full operation and configuration of the unit.

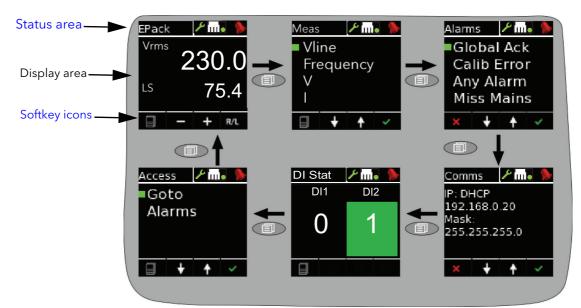


Figure 16 Operator interface

The figure above shows a typical operator mode screen. The other available screens are scrolled through using the return (page) pushbutton. The configuration of the unit defines which parameters actually appear.

The screens are displayed in the following order:

- 1. EPack Main Screen (as shown in the figure)
- 2. Meas menu
- 3. Alarms menu
- 4. DI Stat

Notes:

- 1. The Alarms display appears only if there are any active alarms. The up/down arrow pushbuttons can be used to scroll through the alarm list, if there are more alarms active than can be displayed on one screen height.
- 2. The 'Goto' item allows the user to enter Configuration mode, providing the known.
- 3. The Energy display appears only if the Energy option is fitted.

Status area

This area at the top of the screen contains text descriptive of the current operation, and a number of icons as follows



Configuration key. Displayed when the unit is in configuration mode.

Alarm symbol. Indicates that one or more alarms is active.

Softkey icons

A number of icons can appear at the bottom of the display, and each icon represents the action of the pushbutton immediately below it.



Menu. This appears in the bottom left corner, and operation of the Return pushbutton causes the top level menu to appear.

Return. This red cross icon appears in the bottom left corner, and operation of the Return pushbutton causes any configuration changes on the current page to be 'undone' or, if none, causes the display to 'go up' one level.



Plus and minus icons. Operation of the associated scroll up/down pushbutton causes the displayed value to increment or decrement.



Up/down arrows. Operation of the associated scroll up/down pushbutton causes the various menu items on display to be scrolled through.



Right/Left arrow. The right-pointing arrow appears in the bottom right-hand corner, and operation of the Enter pushbutton causes the cursor to shift right. Once this has been done, a left-pointing arrow appears in the bottom left-hand corner, allowing the user to shift the cursor to the left using the Return pushbutton.

Enter. This green tick appears in the bottom right corner, and operation of the Enter pushbutton causes any configuration change(s) on the display page to be confirmed.



Remote/Local. This appears in the bottom right corner, and operation of the Enter pushbutton toggles the setpoint selection between local and remote.

Pushbuttons

The functions of the four pushbuttons below the display depend on what is displayed in the softkey area. The leftmost pushbutton (Return) is associated with the leftmost soft key, the down arrow pushbutton is associated with the next soft key and so on. In the example above, the 'Return' key is used both to enter the Menu, and to return from it to the initial display.



Pushbutton functions

Return	Returns to previous menu (while menus are displayed), cancels editing (during parameter editing), and performs screen cycling (during operator mode).
Scroll down/up	Allows the user to scroll through the available menu items or values.
Enter	Goes to next menu item. In parameter edit mode, this button confirms the changes.

Menu item value selection

Menu items are scrolled through using the up/down pushbuttons. Once the required item is displayed, the Enter pushbutton is used to select it for editing. Editing of the item's value is carried out by scrolling through the available choices, using the up and down scroll keys. Once the desired value is displayed, the Enter pushbutton is used to confirm the choice.

Where multiple changes have to be made (as in editing an IP address for example), the Enter pushbutton acts as a right cursor key, moving from the field just edited to the next field. (The Return pushbutton moves the cursor left). Once all fields have been edited, the Enter pushbutton is used a final time to confirm the choice.

Front Panel Event Indication

A number of instrument alarms and events can occur, and these are indicated by icons appearing on the display screen. The events and alarms are listed below. See Alarms (page 232) for a more details.

Instrument events

Conf Entry	The instrument has been placed in configuration mode (cogwheel symbol).
Conf Exit	The instrument has been taken out of configuration mode (no icon).
GlobalAck	A global acknowledgement of all latched alarms has been performed.
Quick Code Entry	The Quick Code menu is active (cogwheel icon + 'QCode' in display area).

The following alarms all cause a red bell icon to appear in the top right hand corner of the screen.

Indication alarms

LimitAct	One or more limits are active in the control block
LoadOverl	An over current alarm has become active in one or more Network blocks.
PrcValTfr	Process value transfer is active in the control block.

System alarms

ChopOff	The 'Chop-off' alarm has been detected.
FuseBlown	There is no internal fuse, but it is possible to use DI2 as a 'fuse-blown' input wired to the alarm block in iTools.
MainsFreq	Mains Frequency is outside the acceptable range.
Missmains	Supply power is missing.
NetwDip	The 'network dip' alarm has been detected.
Thyr SC	Thyristor short circuit. It is not possible to detect a thyristor short circuit when the unit is delivering 100% output power.

Process alarms

ClosedLp Ana_In Over C	The Control block 'Closed Loop' alarm has been detected. Over current in shunt. If this alarm is detected, firing is stopped by default and Analog Input type is automatically switched to 0-10V mode to avoid damage.
Under Volt	Line under voltage (configurable between 2 and 30% of nominal voltage).
Over Volt	Line over voltage (configurable between 2 and 10% of nominal voltage)
PLF	The 'Partial Load Failure' alarm has been detected.
TLF	The 'Total Load failure' alarm has been detected.
PLU	The 'Partial Load Unbalance' alarm has been detected.

Quickcode

At first switch-on, the EPack unit enters the 'QuickCode' menu which allows the user to configure the major parameters without having to enter the full configuration menu structure of the unit. Figure 17 shows an overview of a typical QuickCode menu. The actual displayed menu items will vary according to the number of software features purchased. When 'Finish' is selected to 'Yes', the instrument cold starts after confirmation (Enter key); when set to 'Cancel' the instrument discards any changes and restarts with the previous configuration.

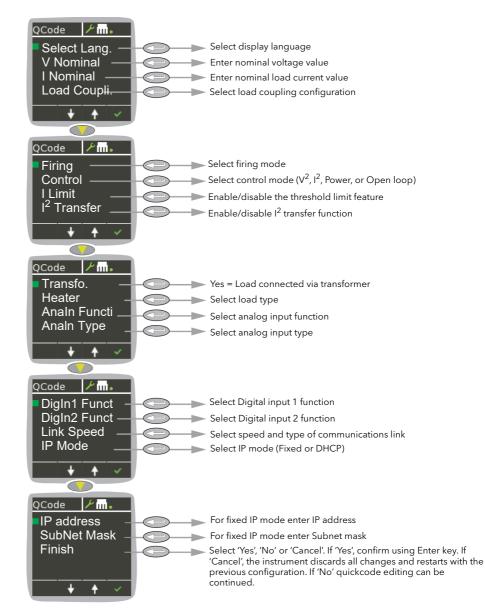


Figure 17 Typical QuickCode menu

Notes:

- 1. If the unit has been fully configured at the factory, the Quickcode menu will be skipped, and the unit will go into operation mode at first switch on.
- Once quit, the Quickcode menu can be returned to at any time from the Access menu (described later in this document (Configuration using iTools (page 141)). Returning to the Quickcode menu cold-starts the unit.

Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From
V_Nominal	Nominal Voltage	3412	230	
I_Nominal	Nominal Current	3411	16	
Load_Coupling	Load coupling configuration	3420	3S (O) 🔻	
Firing	Firing Mode	3402	BurstVar (1) 🔻	
Control	Control Mode	3405	ControlVsq (0) -	
I_Limit	Enable Limit	3403	LimitDisable (0) 🔻	
12_Transfer	Enable Transfer (Proportional limit)	3404	TransferDisable (0) 💌	
Xfmr	Load type configuration.	3410	No (0) 🔻	
Heater	Heater type selection	3406	Resistive (0) 🔻	
Al_Fct	Analog Input Function	3407	Setpoint (1) 💌	
Al_Type	Analog Input Type	3408	0·10V (0) 🔻	
DI1_Fct	Digital Input 1 Function	3418	FiringEnable (1) 💌	
DI2_Fct	Digital Input 2 Function	3409	AlarmAck (1) 💌	
Finish	Finished Quick start configuration	3400	No (0) 🔻	

	Figure 18 iTools Qcode page
Language	Select English, French, German, Italian or Spanish. Once confirmed all further displays appear in the selected language.
V Nominal	The nominal value of the supply voltage (valid entries are 20V to 500V). Default value appears. Use the up/down arrow buttons to edit.

Note: The nominal voltage is line to line for all listed configurations, except Star with Neutral (4S) which is Line to Neutral, see Load Configurations (page 50).

()	
l Nominal	The current flowing through the load according to the nominal load power. This current must not exceed the maximum current the unit has been designed for. Lower values are not recommended as in such cases, the resulting accuracy and linearity may not be within specification. Default value appears. Use up/down arrow buttons to edit.
Load Coupling	Select one of the following; 3D (closed Delta), 3S (Star without Neutral), 4S (Star with Neutral) and 6D (open Delta). See Load Configurations (page 50) for more details.
Firing Mode	Select from IHC (Intelligent Half Cycle), Burst Var (Burst Variable), Burst Fix (Burst Fixed), Logic or Phase Angle.
Control	Select VSq (V ²), Isq (I ²), Power (P) or Open Loop
ILimit	This is used to enable/disable threshold limit. (By default the current limit function is enabled).

HAZARD OF FIRE

• The current limit function by phase angle reduction is not available with Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC). Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.

DANGER

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

 $\underline{\wedge}$

I²Transfer

This is used to enable/disable the transfer feature. Quick code configures squared current as the transfer process value.

XFMR (Transfo.) No = Resistive load type; Yes = Transformer primary.

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

For transformer Load, select XFMR as Load Type (select Yes for Transfo. in quick code).

For transformer Load, in burst firing mode, without soft start, adjust Delayed Triggering (DelayedTrigger) to minimize inrush current.

- Heater
- Select from Resistive, (Short wave) Infra red, CSi (Silicon carbide) or MOSi2 (Molybdenum disilicide).

🕂 DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

- With SWIR Load, if a fast response time is required, or if IHC firing mode has been selected, select SWIR (Infrared) as Heater type.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to 125% of MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, adjust the duration of the safety ramp (SafetyRamp), the cooling time of the load (SWIRLoadCoolingTime) and the value of SWIR Load Cooling Threshold, to limit the RMS load inrush current SWIR to less than 2.5 times the product current rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Analn Function	Select SP (setpoint), HR (setpoint limit), CL (current limit), TS (transfer limit) or None (no function) as Analog Input function.	
	Note: Setpoint is only available for AnaIn Function if DI1 or DI2 Fct are not set to 'Setpoint' while Firing Mode is set to 'Logic'.	
Analn Type	Select 0 to 10V, 1 to 5V, 2 to 10V, 0 to 5V, 0 to 20mA or 4 to 20 mA as analog input type.	
DI1 Fct	Select 'Firing Enable', Alarm ack(nowledge), RemSP se (select remote setpoint), Fuse Blown, Setpoint (in logic mode) or none.	
	Notes:	
	1. The function is available if not set in DI2.	
	 Setpoint is only available for DigIn1 Function if AnaIn or DI2 Fct is not set to 'Setpoint' whilst Firing Mode is 	

set to 'Logic'.

DI2 Fct	Select Firing Enable, Alarm ack(nowledge), RemSP sel (select remote setpoint), Fuse Blown, Setpoint, 10V user output, Firing Enable or none.
	Notes:
	 Setpoint is only available for DI1 Fct or DI2 Fct if Analn Function is not set to 'Setpoint' while Firing Mode is set to 'Logic'.
	2. DI1 Fct and DI2 Fct are mutually exclusive.
Link Speed	Select from 'AutoNego', 100Mb, 100Mb Half duplex, 10Mb, 10Mb Half duplex.
IP Mode	Choose 'Fixed', 'DHCP' or 'DCP' (if Profinet feature enabled).
IP Address	For fixed mode, allows the IP address to be edited, one section at a time. Use the up-down arrow pushbuttons to edit the first section (XXX.xxx.xxx.), then 'Enter' to move to the next section (xxx.XXX.xxx.xxx) and repeat until all four sections are as required
SubNetMask	As for IP address above, but for the subnet mask.
Finish	If 'Yes' is selected (and confirmed using the enter key), quick code exits and the instrument restarts with the new configuration. If 'No' is selected then no action is taken and the user can continue to edit the quick code parameters. If 'Cancel' is selected then all changes are discarded, quick code exits and the instrument restarts with the previous (i.e. unedited) configuration.

Firing modes definitions

Logic

Power switches on, two or three zero crossings of the supply <u>voltage</u> after the logic input switches on. Power switches off, two or three zero crossings of <u>current</u> after the logic input switches off. For resistive loads, voltage and current cross zero simultaneously. With inductive loads, a phase difference exists between the voltage and current, meaning that they cross zero at different times. The size of the phase difference increases with increasing inductance.

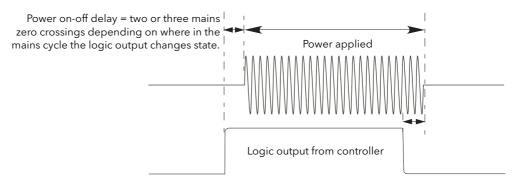


Figure 19 Logic firing mode

Burst Fixed Firing

This means that there is a fixed 'cycle time' equal to an integer number of supply voltage cycles as set up in the Modulator menu. Power is controlled by varying the ratio between the ON period and the OFF period within this cycle time (Figure 20).

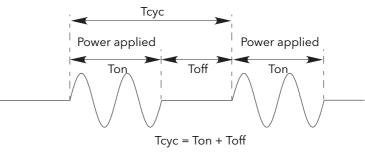


Figure 20 Burst Fixed mode

Burst Variable Firing

Burst Firing Variable is the preferred mode for temperature control. Between 0 and 50% of setpoint, the ON time is the 'Min on' time set in the modulator menu and the OFF time is varied to achieve control. Between 50% and 100%, the OFF time is the value set for 'Min on' and power is controlled by varying the number of ON cycles.

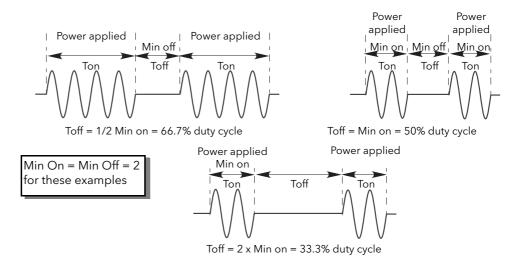


Figure 21 Burst variable firing

Phase Angle Control

This mode of firing controls power by varying the amount of each cycle which is applied to the load, by switching the controlling thyristor on part-way through the cycle. Figure 22 shows an example for 50% power.

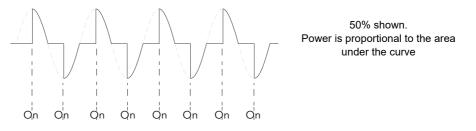
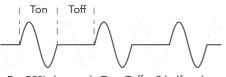


Figure 22 Phase angle mode

Burst mode firing with a single firing (or non-firing) cycle is known as 'Single cycle' mode. In order to reduce power fluctuations during firing time, Intelligent half-cycle mode uses half cycles as firing/non-firing periods. Positive and negative going cycles are evened out, so that no dc component arises. The following examples describe half-cycle mode for 50%, 33% and 66% duty cycles.

50% Duty Cycle

The firing and non-firing time corresponds to a single supply cycle (Figure 23).

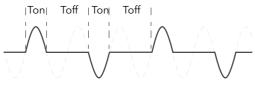


For 50% duty cycle Tn = Toff = 2 half cycles

Figure 23 Intelligent half cycle mode: 50% duty cycle

33% Duty Cycle

For duty cycles less than 50%, the firing time is one half-cycle. For a 33% duty cycle, firing time is one half cycle; the non-firing time is two half-cycles (Figure 24).



For 33% duty cycle Ton = 1 half cycle; Toff = 2 half cycles

Figure 24 Intelligent half cycle mode: 33% duty cycle

66% Duty Cycle

For duty cycles of greater than 50%, the non-firing time is one half-cycle. For 66% duty cycle, the firing time is two half cycles; the non-firing time is one half cycle (Figure 25).

Ton | Toff Ton | Toff

For 66% duty cycle Ton = 2 half cycles; Toff = 1 half cycle

Figure 25 Intelligent half cycle mode: 66% duty cycle

a. Only available with 3 phase Star with Neutral (4S) and Open delta (6D) load configurations.

All feedback types (except 'Open Loop') are based on real-time measurement of electrical parameters that are normalized to their equivalent Nominal values.

•	•
V ²	Feedback is directly proportional to the square of the RMS voltage measured across the load. For two- or three-phase systems, feedback is proportional to the average of the squares of the individual phase-to-phase or phase-to-Neutral RMS voltage across each load.
Power	Feedback is directly proportional to the total true power delivered to the load network.
J 2	Feedback is directly proportional to the square of the RMS current through the load. For two- or three-phase systems, feedback is proportional to the average of the squares of the individual RMS load currents.
Open loop	No measurement feedback. The thyristor firing angle in Phase angle mode, or the duty cycle in burst-firing mode, are proportional to the setpoint.

Note: V_{rms} and I_{rms} require a specific wiring, with iTools GWE, in Burst mode. Contact your local distributor.

Transfer Mode

The control system can use automatic transfer of certain feedback parameters. For example with loads with very low cold resistance, I² feedback should be used to limit inrush current, but once the load has started to warm up, Power feedback should be used; the control program can be configured to change feedback mode automatically.

The Transfer mode can be selected as I^2 to P as appropriate to the type of load being controlled.

None I² No feedback parameter transfer to the control program. Selects transfer mode: I² to the selected Feedback Mode (above).

Limitation features

This limiting is implemented using phase angle or duty cycle reduction depending on the type of control (e.g. phase angle, burst firing).

To prevent damage on some particular applications the 'chop off' function can be used.

Note: The limiting function 'Chop-Off' is considered an 'Alarm' in EPack.

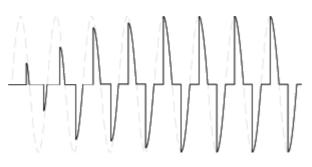
In order, for example, to prevent potentially damaging inrush currents, it is possible to set a value for power or Current squared which is not to be exceeded during the mains period. For this case, limitation has to be configured to run by phase angle reduction.

For loads exhibiting a low impedance at low temperatures but a higher impedance at working temperature, the current drawn reduces as the load warms, and limiting gradually becomes unnecessary.

Control limit configuration (page 151) describes the configuration parameters which allow the user to enter a Process Variable (PV) and a setpoint (SP), where the PV is the value to be limited (e.g. l^2) and the SP is the value that the PV must not exceed.

Firing Angle Limiting (in Phase Angle mode)

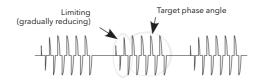
For phase angle control, limiting is achieved by reducing the firing angle on each half mains cycle such that the limit value of the relevant parameter is not exceeded. Limiting is reduced, by the firing angle gradually increasing, until the target setting is achieved.



Firing Angle Limiting (in Burst mode)

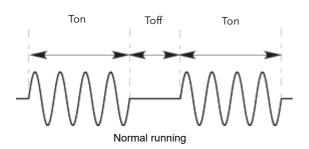
In Burst Mode limiting can also be achieved by reducing firing Angle during the ON time such that the limit value of the relevant parameter is not exceeded.

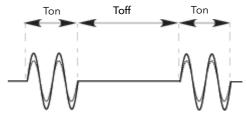
In this way the PV must not exceed the limit SP during the ON time. We get 'Burst of Phase Angle'. See following figure.



Duty Cycle Limiting (in Burst mode)

For Burst Firing only, limiting reduces the ON state of the burst firing driving the load. Load current, voltage and active power are calculated over the period of each (Ton + Toff) period.





During limitation, amplitude increases when duty cycle decrease

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

WITHOUT Current limit function by phase angle reduction, if SWIR (Infrared) is NOT selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Calculate the maximum current of the load by taking account of load resistive tolerance (tolerance and variation due to temperature) and voltage tolerance.

Current limit function by phase angle reduction may be selected to limit the inrush current of the load and reduce the current rating of the product (select "Enable" for "I Limit" In quick code).

A DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

- WITH Current limit function by phase angle reduction, select the product current rating greater than or equal to the nominal current of the load .
- Setting of current limit function by phase angle reduction must be lower or equal to product current rating..
- The current limit function by phase angle reduction is not available with Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC). Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.
- Duty cycle current limiting features (in burst mode), does not limit the peak current value. Select the product current rating greater than or equal to the MAXIMUM current of the load.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Chop Off Definition

This is a technique which detects an over-current alarm state and stops further thyristor firing for the duration of that alarm state. All the relevant parameters are to be found in the "Network Setup configuration" on page 191.

The conditions that trigger a Chop Off alarm are:

 When the ChopOff Threshold exceeds the number of times specified in NumberChop Off parameter. (NumberChop Off can be specified to any value between 1 and 255 inclusive). See page 191 for further details. The ChopOff Threshold is adjustable between 100% and 350% inclusive of INominal.

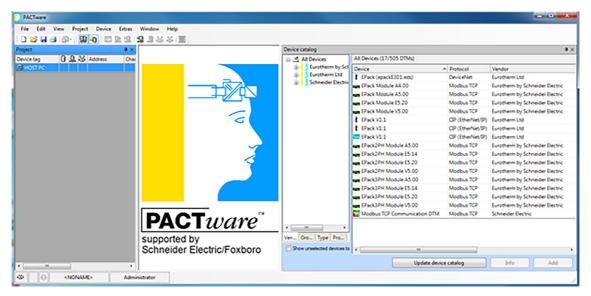
When the alarm is triggered the unit stops firing and raises a chop off alarm. Firing is not resumed until the operator acknowledges the Chop Off alarm, to restart.

Communications

Field Device Tool (FDT) and Device Type Manager (DTM) Support

EPack supports FDT/DTM feature. Therefore the unit can be managed by any FDT container:

- 1. Install the latest version of iTools, which will include the latest iTools DTMs.
- Install a FDT container e.g. PACTware (https://www.se.com/ww/en/download/document/FD-SOFT-M-026/).
 Install a ModbusTCP CommDTM
 - (https://www.se.com/ww/en/download/document/Modbus+Communication +DTM+Library/).
- 4. Run FDT container and update DTM catalog to make latest products available:



Note: For more information about installation of your FDT container refer to the user manual.

 Drag and drop both ModbusTCP Communication DTM and the product you want to connect, EPack, from the product catalog to the Project window.

evice tag 🚺 🧕 💑 Address Channel S	😝 EPack2PH Module V5.02 # Configuration 🔛 Modb	usTCPCommunicationDTM # Configuration	4 8
HOST PC	EPack2PH V5.02		Eurotherm
ModbusTCPCommunicationDTI / +	Eurotherm EPack2PH		Luiothem
📷 FPack2PH Module V5.02 🖌 🖈 🗢 192.168.1.1 ModbusTCPCome	V5.02		by Schneider Electr
	Récapitulatif Measure List Config Fault Detection Energy 1	i0 Channels	
	Device Identity Parameters Device Family Parket Power Controllers Product Tamily Power Controller Product IM (Pack2PVV502 Product IM Leventher Device) Product IM Leventher Taka2PH Fournisseur Eurotherm by Schneider Electric Version V5.02	Mentifier (fur DICP discovery) Literifier (Pau30H Mobile VS 02) Take me to 1700s	
	Technical characteristics:		
	Name Comms. Protocol	Description Comms Protocol	Value ModbusTCP
	Comms. IPMode	IP configuration mode (static - dhcp - dcp)	Fixed
	Comms. IP_address	P address.	192,168,1.1
	Comms. Subnet_Mask	P address of the subnet mask	255.255.255.0
	Comms, LinkSpeed	Speed of the ethernet link.	Auto Nego
	Comms, TCPTimeout	TCP Comms Timeout in ms.	5000
	Comms, TCPCounter	TOP Counter	0
	Comms. TCP_Open	TCP Number Open Connection	3
			123456
	Options. SerialNo	Serial Number	
		Senal Number Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1	56155
	Optons. SeriaNo		56155 15271
	Optons. SerialNo Optons. Passcode 1	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1	
	Optons. SeriaNo Optons. Passcode 1 Optons. Passcode 2	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 2	15271
	Options. SerialNo Options. Passcode 1 Options. Passcode 2 Options. Passcode 3	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 2 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 3	15271 0
	Options, Senahlo Options, Passcole 1 Options, Passcole 2 Options, Passcole 3 Configuration, NetType	Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 1 Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 2 Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 3 The type of retended to be used Power Module type Software velocities of the product.	15271 0 29H
	Options: Senaiha Options: Passode 1 Options: Passode 2 Options: Passode 3 Configuration: NetType Configuration: NetType	Pais Code for Features Secure Word 1 Pais Code for Features Secure Word 2 Pais Code for Features Secure Word 3 The type of retenoirs to be used Power Model or pais	15271 0 29H Type_32A
	Options, Senaho Options, Reascode 1 Options, Reascode 2 Options, Reascode 3 Configuration, NetType Configuration, NetType Configuration, Rever Type	Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 1 Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 2 Pais Cole for Features Secure Word 3 The type of retended to be used Power Module type Software velocities of the product.	15271 0 29H Type_32A V5.02

6. Set the IP address of your product in ModbusTCP communication DTM.

PACTware		-	-			
File Edit View Project Dev	ice Extras Window	Help				
i 🗅 💕 🖬 🎯 🖗 i 🔀 🍋 i	86 😰 😰 🕸 🖬					
Project		# ×	EPack2PH Module V5.02 Config	uration 🔚 ModbusTCPCommun	icatio Configuration	4 0 × 4
	0 🧕 🕸 Address	Channel S	Modbus DTM de communication TC	P Modbus		Schnoidor
HOST PC			2.0.8pf			Schneider Blectric
E ModbusTCPCommunicationDTM						Clectric
EPack2PH Module V5.02	/ + ⊲⊳ 192.168.1.1	ModbusTCPComm	Configuration Exécution Table d'adre	esses Scrutation		
			Adresse	Nom de l'instance	Nom	Fournisseur
			192.168.1.1	EPack2PH Module V5.02	EPack2PH Module V5.02	Eurotherm by Schneider Electric
					ОК	Cancel Apply Help
						Cancer China Lucia
· (Þ.	 Disconnected 👔	Data-set		.:
	Administrator					

7. Ensure the Project DTM module i.e. (ModbusTCPCommunicationDTM) is selected, select right mouse button and click *Connect*.

PACTware		The Party of	(In sec In holizing plan, dog Monard Hard	No. OF TAXABLE PARTY.
File Edit View Project Device Extras Wi	indow Help			
2 🖉 🧏 🖾 🖓 - 🔛 😫 🛀	S 🕸 🔅 🔟			
Project	4 × EPack2P	H Module A5.00 Configuration 🚮 Mo	dbusTCPCommunicationDTM Configuration	
Device tag 🚺 🔒 🔯 A	Address Channel Sta Modbus DT	M de communication TCP Modbus		
B HOST PC	E D T 20).Spf		
ModbusTCPCommunicationDTM H For the second se				
EPack2PH Module A5.00 / +		Exécution Table d'adresses Scrutation		
<u>D</u>	Load from device	e	Nom de l'instance	Nom
9		8.1.1	EPack2PH Module A5.00	EPack2PH Module
	Parameter			
	Measured value			
	Simulation			
	Diagnosis			
	Display channels	-		
	Channel			
	Topology Scan			
	Diagnostic Scan			
	Up-/Download-Manager			
	Print			
	Additional functions			
2	Add device			
	Exchange device			
<u>8</u>	Delete device			
	Properties Modbus TCP Communication DTM			

8. A batch of parameters can then be monitored from the FDT container and the *Take me to iTools* button can be used to open and configure parameter values using iTools.

Decise to a Constraint of the second	Eurotherm by Schneider Electr
Modbart CKCommunicationD / + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	
Pask2PH Module V5.02 Pask2PH Module V	by Schneider Electr
Device Manity Fazameters Device Family Pazameters Product Stan Power Controllers Product Many Power Controller Product Many Power Po	
Device Findly - Effects Power Controllers Product 14 (Pack2PW 1562) Product 14 (Pack2PW 1562) Produ	
Technical characteristics:	<u> </u>
Name Description	Value
Comms. Protocol Comms Protocol	ModbusTCP
Comms. IPMode IP configuration mode (static - dhup - dop) Comms. IP_address IP address.	Fixed 192, 168, 1, 1
Commu. Subvets Mark Paddress of the subvet mark	255.255.255.0
Comma Junice of the source of	Auto Nego
Commis, Consultation of the Commission of the Co	5000
Commit CPCauter TCPCauter	0
Comms. TCP_Open TCP Number Open Connection	3
Optors. Serial Number	123456
Options. PassCode 1 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1	56155
Options. Passcode 2 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 2	15271
Options. Passcode3 Pass Code for Features Secure Word 3	0
Configuration. NetType The type of network to be used	29H
Configuration. PowerType Power Module type	Type_32A
Configuration. Software Software version of the product	V5.02
Configuration. EIPSoftware Software version of the Ethernet IP option	V1.1
Configuration. PRSoftware Software version of the Profinet option	V1.0 -

EtherNet/IP

Introduction

EPack EtherNet/IP (Ethernet/Industrial Protocol) is a 'producer-consumer' communication system used to allow industrial devices to exchange time-critical data. Such devices range from simple I/O devices such as sensors/actuators, to complex control devices such as robots and PLCs. The producer-consumer model allows the exchange of information between a single sending device (producer) and a large number of receiving devices (consumers) without having to send data multiple times to multiple destinations.

EtherNet/IP makes use of the CIP (Common Industrial Protocol), common network, transport and application layers currently implemented by DeviceNet and ControlNet. Standard Ethernet and TCP/IP technology is used to transport CIP communications packets. The result is a common, open application layer on top of Ethernet and TCP/IP protocols.The EPack power controller can be directly included in an Ethernet/IP configured installation, with the Ethernet/IP option enabled, (a chargeable feature), see Network Communications (page 56).

EPack Power Controller, in common with other Eurotherm controllers, has available a large number of potential parameters but practical systems are constrained by the total I/O space available in the master being used and by the amount of traffic permissible on the network. A limited number of predefined parameters have, therefore, been made available in EPack controller but it is possible to add non-defined parameters as required by a particular process. This is described in Data Exchange Mapping (page 81). Specific hardware must be used for the master such as an Allen-Bradley PLC.

NOTICE

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• When ordering the product, select the appropriate communication protocol or make sure it is available as a software upgrade option.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-functional equipment.

The PROFINET protocol and the EtherNet/IP protocol cannot be used together. Select one of the appropriate Protocol among the different options.

EtherNet/IP protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with ModbusTCP communication protocol and PROFINET protocol.

EPack supports the Modbus/TCP protocol whatever the communication protocol is.

The EtherNet/IP implementation features in EPack power controller include:

- 10/100Mb, full / half duplex operation: auto sensing
- Galvanically isolated bus electronics
- A selectable software option, at configuration
- Implicit (Polled) I/O messaging connection

CIP Object Support

Class (hex)	Name
01	Identity Object
02	Message Router Object
04	Assembly Object (32 inputs / 16 outputs <=> EPack's Fieldbus I/O Gateway)
06	Connection Manager Object
0F	Parameter Object (Optional)
F5	TCP/IP Interface Object
F6	Ethernet Link Object (Optional)

Setting Up the EPack Power Controller Unit

It is recommended that the communications settings for each instrument are set up before connecting it to any EtherNet/IP network. This is not essential but network conflicts may occur if the default settings interfere with equipment already on the network.

For the EtherNet/IP instrument the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway and DHCP enable need to be configured.

Changing any one of these parameters may immediately move the instrument to a new state. For this reason, it is recommended that such changes are made offline, before connecting to an EtherNet/IP network.

IP Addresses are usually presented in the form "abc.def.ghi.jkl". In the EPack Comms folder IP is represented using this standard, see below;

Pr	Nom	Description	Adresse	Valeur	Connexion de
۶	Hostname	Name of the device on the link-local network.	3136	epk000A8D390002	
۶	SRVname	MBUS name	3118	MODBUS_Epack[000A8D390002]	
۶	IPMode	IP configuration mode (static - dhcp)	3109	Fixe (0) *	
	IPStatus	Status of the IP address	3111	0	
	IP	Current IP of the instrument	3114	192.168.0.25	
	cSubNetMas	Current SubNet mask IP	3115	255.255.255.0	
	cDefault_Gat	Current Default Gateway IP address	3116	192.168.0.1	
	PrefMaster	Preferred Master IP address	3105	192.168.0.1	
	Address	Adresse Comms	3101	255	
۶	IP_address	IP address.	3102	192.168.0.25	
Ì	Subnet_Mas	IP address of the subnet mask	3103	255.255.255.0	
Ì	Default_Gate	IP address of the default gateway	3104	192.168.0.1	
	MAC12	Adresse MAC1	3106	2560	
	MAC34	Adresse MAC 2	3107	14733	
	MAC56	AdresseMAC3	3108	512	
	Timout	Comms Timeout in ms.	3110	5000	
	Fallback1	Fallback1	3112	1	
	Fallback2	Fallback2	3113	0	
	EnTimeout	Timeout Enable	3117	Sans (0) 🔻	
	Protocol	Protocole Comms	3100	ModbusTCP (0) 🔹	
	lOgateway	IO Gateway Access	4744	0	
۶	LinkSpeed	Speed of the ethernet link.	3149	Auto Nego (0) 📍	
	TCPTimeout	TCP Comms Timeout in ms	3150	5000	

ī

They can also be entered using iTools under this form 'abc.def.ghi.jkl'.

This also applies to the SubNet Mask and Default Gateway IP Address.

In EPack controller units MAC addresses are shown as three separate hexadecimal values on an EPack instrument itself or decimal values in iTools. MAC1 shows the first address value (aa), MAC2 shows the second address value (bb) and so on.

Dynamic IP Addressing

IP addresses may be 'fixed' - set by the user, or dynamically allocated by a DHCP server on the network. When IP addresses are dynamically allocated the server uses the instrument MAC address to uniquely identify them.

To configure dynamic IP addressing, the user must first set the IPMode parameter to *DHCP*.

Once connected to the network and powered, the instrument will acquire its "IP address", "SubNet Mask" and "Default Gateway" from the DHCP Server automatically and display this information within a few seconds.

Note: If the DHCP server does not respond (in common with other Ethernet appliances in this situation) the unit will not be accessible via the network. Instead, the unit will default to an automatic IP mode with an IP address in the range of 169.254.xxx.xxx.

Fixed IP Addressing

IP addresses may be 'fixed' - meaning the user manually enters the IP address and SubNet Mask values, which will remain unchanged, before connecting the instrument to the network.

To configure fixed IP addressing, the instrument must be powered and the user must first set the IPMode parameter to *Fixed*.

Then set the IP address and SubNet Mask as required, to configure a fixed IP address, see Comms menu (page 121).

Default Gateway

The "Comms" folder also includes configuration settings for "Default Gateway". These parameters will be set automatically when Dynamic IP Addressing is used. When fixed IP addressing is used these settings are only required if the instrument needs to communicate wider than the local area network.

Figure 26 shows the appearance of Ethernet/IP User Comms configuration parameters in iTools:-

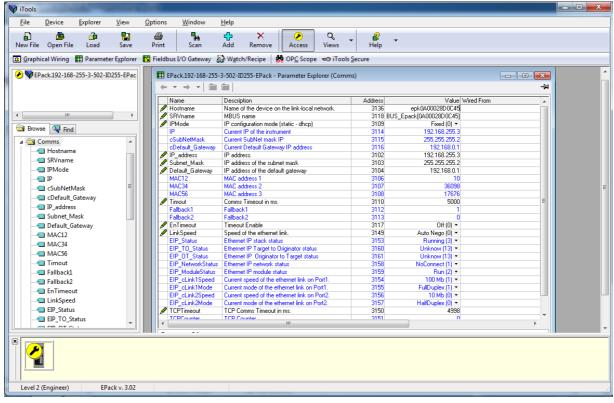


Figure 26 Ethernet/IP User Comms configuration parameters

Data Exchange Mapping

Up to 32 input and 16 output parameter variables may be included in the Ethernet/IP cyclic (implicit) data exchange.

By default, the most frequently used values are included, but it is possible to select other parameters within the unit. The default mapping is as follows:

Input Definition	Output Definition
FaultDetAnyAlarm	SetProv.Remote2
Control.Main.PV	
Control.Main.SP	
Network.Meas.I	
Network.Meas.V	

Input and Output Parameters are 16 bits (2 bytes) each.

To set up the EPack controller unit so that the desired parameters can be read and written involves setting up the INPUT and OUTPUT data tables. This is carried out using iTools.

The Ethernet/IP master may be required to work with many diverse slaves from different manufacturers and with different functions. Furthermore, EPack controller units contain many parameters most of which will not be required by the network master for a particular application. It is, therefore, necessary for the user to define which Input and Output parameters are to be available on the Ethernet/IP network. The master may then map the selected device parameters into the PLC input/output registers.

Values from each slave, 'Input Data', are read by the master, which then runs a control program. The master then generates a set of values, 'Output Data', into a pre-defined set of registers to be transmitted to the slaves. This process is called an 'I/O data exchange' and is repeated continuously, to give a cyclical I/O data exchange.

The Input/Output definitions for Ethernet/IP are configured using iTools.

Select the 'Fieldbus I/O Gateway' tool from the lower toolbar, and an editor screen will appear similar to that shown in Figure 27.

<u>File Device Fieldbus View Options Window H</u> elp
New File Open File Load Save Print Scan Add Remove Access Views Help
🖪 Graphical Wiring 🖽 Parameter Explorer 🚺 Fieldbus I/O Gateway 🔛 Watch/Recipe 🛛 🌼 OPC Scope 👓 iTools Secure
Epack 192-168-255-3-502-10255 Pack 192-168-255-3-502-10255 Pack 192-168-255-3-502-10255 Pack 192-168-255-3-502-10255 Pack 192-168-255-3-502-10255 Pack 192-168-255-3-502-10255
Level 2 (Engineer) EPack v. A3.02

Figure 27 The I/O (Fieldbus I/O Gateway) Editor in iTools

There are two tabs within the editor, one for the definition of Inputs, and the other for Outputs. 'Inputs' are values sent from the EPack controller to the Ethernet/IP master, for example, alarm status information or measured values, i.e. they are readable values.

Note: The Input and Output buffer should not be empty. At least one parameter should be selected so the data cyclic exchange functions correctly.

'Outputs' are values received from the master and used by the EPack controller, for example, setpoints written from the master to EPack controller. Note that Outputs are written on every Ethernet/IP cycle, which is frequent (of the order of 100ms), and so values from Ethernet/IP will overwrite any changes made on the EPack controller keypad unless special measures are taken to prevent this.

The procedure for selecting variables is the same for both input and output tabs. Double click the next available position in the input or output data and select the variable to assign to it. A pop-up provides a browser from which a list of parameters can be opened. Double click the parameter to assign it to the input definition. Note that you should assign inputs and outputs contiguously, as a 'not wired' entry will terminate the list even if there are assignments following it.

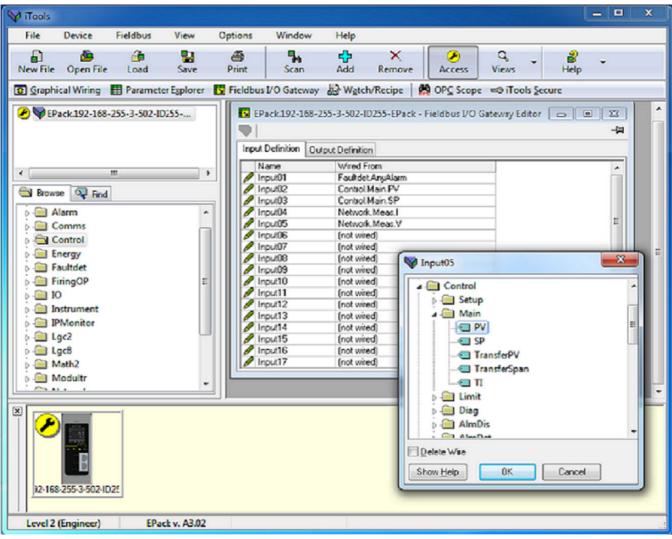


Figure 28 shows an example of the pop-up and the input list produced.

Figure 28 Selecting an Input Value and Example of an Input List

When the list is populated with the variables you require, record how many 'wired' entries are included in the input and output areas as this will be needed when setting up the Ethernet/IP Master. In the example above, there are five input values, each of two bytes in length, so a total of 10 bytes of data. Record this number, as it is required when setting the I/O length when configuring the Ethernet/IP master.

Note: No checks are made that output variables are writeable and if a read only variable is included in the output list, any values sent to it over Ethernet/IP will be ignored with no indication to the master.

Once the changes have been made to the I/O lists, they must be downloaded to the EPack controller unit.



The EPack controller Unit will need to be powered off and on again once this has been done for the changes to register.

The next step in the process is to configure the Ethernet/IP master.

Setting Up The Master

An example of a master may be a CompactLogix L23E QB1B PLC from Allen Bradley. With this example, there are two methods supplied to set up the PLC Ethernet/IP Master using;

- RSLinx (RSLinx Classic Lite & EDS Wizard)
- RSLogix 5000

Cyclic (Implicit) Data Exchange

Example: EDS file Import Wizard (RSLinx Tools)

It is necessary to import an EDS (Electronic Data Sheet) file. The EDS file is designed to automate the Ethernet/IP network configuration process by precisely defining the required device parameter information. Software configuration tools utilise the EDS file to configure an Ethernet/IP configuration.

It is available from your supplier, or electronically from EPack Power Controller Downloads.

EDS File Import

- 1. Connect EPack power controller to Rockwell Instrument.
- Launch the EDS Hardware Installation Tool by selecting Start > All Programs > Rockwell Software > RSLinx > Tools.

The Rockwell Automation - Hardware Installation Tool displays.

his tool allows v	- Hardware Installation Tool you to change the hardware description ently installed on your computer.
Add Bemove	Launch the EDS Wizard and add selected hardware description files and associated components only. Launch the EDS Wizard and remove selected hardware description files and associated components only.
Remove <u>A</u> ll	Remove all previously installed hardware description files and associated components from your computer.
	<u>E</u> xit

Figure 29 Hardware Installation Tool

3. Select Add.

4. Select Register a single file and click Browse.



Figure 30 EDS file Registration

5. Navigate to and select file *EPack_V300.eds* stored locally, then click *Open*.

Select an EDS file	2				<u>? ×</u>
Look jn:	1		•	+ 🗈 💣 🖩] •
My Recent Documents Desktop	EPack_V300.e	ds			
My Documents					
I My Computer					
(File <u>n</u> ame:	EPack_V300		•	<u>O</u> pen
My Network	Files of type:	EDS Files (*.eds)		•	Cancel
Places		✓ Open as read-only			

Figure 31 EDS file selection

6. Click *Next*. The EDS file installation test results are displayed, indicated by the green tick left of the file location in the below panel.

guarantee EDS file validity.		This test does no	2
Installation Test Results			
	_v300.eds		
/iew file			

Figure 32 EDS file installation test results

7. Select Next.

The Change Graphic Image option appears. This stage allows user to change the icon associated with the device being set up. The EPack EDS file provides a default EPack icon, so no changes are required.

Change Graph	ion's EDS Wizard ic Image ange the graphic image that is associated with a device.	
	Product Types	
<u>C</u> hange icon	Vendor Specific Type	
	EPack	
	1	
	< Back Next >) Cancel

Figure 33 EDS wizard, change graphic image option

8. Select Next.

The Final Task Summary information appears, displaying a summary of the device being registered.

T.	NO			<u>.</u>
	You would like to i EPack	register the folio	wing device.	

Figure 34 EDS wizard install summary

9. Review, confirm device name is correct, then select *Next* to continue.

The final EDS wizard panel, appears confirming you have successfully completed the installing the EDS file for EPack.



Figure 35 EDS wizard successfully completed

10. Select Finish to complete and close the EDS Wizard.

Network Driver - Configuration (using RSLinx Classic Lite)

1. Start *RSLinx* program located in Start > All Programs > Rockwell Software.

The RSLinx Classic Lite program launches.

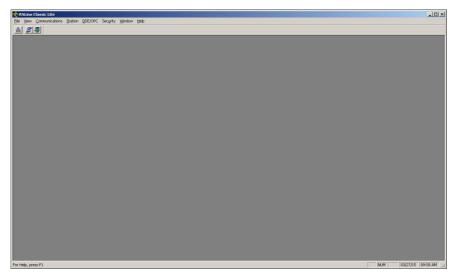


Figure 36 RSLinx Classic Lite

2. Select RSWho, from the Communications menu

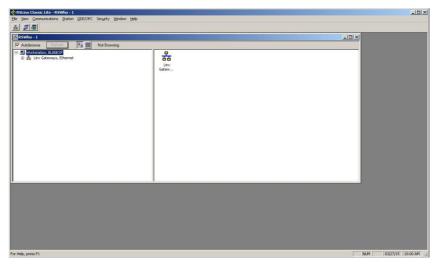


Figure 37 RSLinx Classic, Comms menu, RSWho selected

3. Launch the *Configure Drivers* panel.

The Configure Drivers panel appears.

- 4. From the Available Driver Types drop down menu, select EtherNet/IP Driver.
- 5. Click Add New, enter relevant name for driver, then click Configure button.

Available Driver Types: EtherNet/IP Driver	▼ Add New	<u>Close</u>
		Help
Configured Drivers:		
Name and Description	Status	
		Configure.
		Startup
		Start
		Stop
		Delete

Figure 38 RSLinx Classic configure driver

The Configure Driver: panel is displayed.

6. To link the driver with your PC's Ethernet network connection, select the relevant driver option listed below the *Description* field, on the Configure driver panel.

7. Click Apply, then OK to complete the driver linking process.

erNet/IP Settings			
Browse Local Subnet	C Browse Remote Subnet		
Description		IP Address	_
Vindows Default MD PCNET Family PCI Etherne	et Adapter - Packet Scheduler Miniport	149.121.212.32	

Figure 39 RSLinx Classic configure driver Ethernet/IP settings

🗞 RSLinx Classic Lite - RSWho - 1						
File View Communications Station DDE/OPC Security Window He	ip .					
* 20						
RSWho - 1						
Autobrowse Fielresh P. III Browsing - node 149.12	21.212.26 found					
	Address	Device Type	Online Name	Status		
日 - 思 Warlstatton, BLANDE 문 철 Lins Gatemays, Ethernet 는 국 RS, RE, EINPL, I Charnet 나 R. REAL LINE OF Floats, Floats	149.121.212.26	EPadk	EPack	ок		
For Help, press F1					MUM	03/27/15 10:12 AM

Now you are in a position to browse your network and locate EPack.

Figure 40 RSLinx Classic, EPack on network

Example: Using RSLogix 5000

In I/O configuration, select "New Module" and select "Generic Ethernet module"

In the next dialog window, RSLogix 5000 will ask for information regarding the communication to the EPack EtherNet/IP Slave module.

First enter a name for the EPack EtherNet/IP Slave module: eg 'EPack'.

This name will create a tag in RSLogix 5000, which can be used to access the memory location in the PLCs memory where the data for the EPack Slave module will be stored.

Next step is to select the "Comm Format", which tells RSLogix5000 the format of the data. Select Data-INT, which will represent the data as 16-bit values. (EPack I/O parameters, defined by the iTools Fieldbus I/O Gateway Editor, are 16 bit values).

I/O data is accessed in Input Instance 100 and Output Instance 150, so these values have to be entered as the instance values for input and output.

The size of the input connection and the output connection must correspond to the size that has been defined by the 'iTools Fieldbus I/O Gateway Editor' Input and Output Definitions for the EPack slave.

That is:-

Input size (5 parameters by default (10 bytes), maximum parameters 32) = Number of 'I/O Gateway' Input Parameter definitions. Output size (1 parameter by default (2 bytes), maximum parameters 16) = Number of 'I/O Gateway' Output Parameter definitions.

The EPack Ethernet/IP Slave module does not have a configuration assembly instance, but RSLogix5000 requires a value for this anyway. An instance value of 0 is not a valid instance number, a typical value to use is 199, as shown in the table below. The data size of the configuration instance has to be set to 0, otherwise the configuration instance will be accessed and the connection will be refused.

As a final step enter the IP address that has been configured for the EPack Ethernet/IP slave module.

	Assembly Instance	Data Size
INPUT	100	2 Bytes per "iTools Fieldbus I/O Gateway" Input Parameter Definition
OUTPUT	150	2 Bytes per "iTools Fieldbus I/O Gateway" Output Parameter Definition
CONFIGURATION	199	0

Summary: Cyclic (implicit) I/O Data Exchange setup information:-

Establishing Communications

Communications will commence when the Ethernet/IP network is correctly cabled and powered, the Master (e.g. PLC) and Slave (EPack power controller) are configured with valid unique IP addresses and I/O parameter data definitions are setup.

The Input/Output definitions need to be matched with Master (e.g. PLC) data registers.

Parameters are either INPUT parameters read by the Ethernet/IP Master or OUTPUT parameters written by the Ethernet/IP Master.

Data Formats

Data is returned as 'scaled integers', such that 999.9 is returned or sent as 9999; 12.34 is encoded as 1234. The control program in the Ethernet/IP master converts the numbers into floating point values if required.

The Ethernet/IP EDS (Electronic Data Sheet) file for EPack controller is named:

EPACK_Vx.xx.eds (with Vx.xx representing the EPack software version).

It is available from your supplier, or electronically by going to web site www.eurotherm.com.

The EDS file is designed to automate the Ethernet/IP network configuration process by precisely defining the required device parameter information. Software configuration tools utilize the EDS file to configure an Ethernet/IP network.

Note: The EDS file is automatically installed when you upgrade your unit and is located in C:\Program files (x86)\EPack_Vx.xx.

Troubleshooting

No Communications:

- Check the cabling carefully, ensure that Ethernet plugs are fully located in the sockets.
- Check the 'Comms' list in configuration level and, check that the parameter 'Protocol' provides both options 'Modbus TCP and EIP' (Ethernet/IP). If not, your EPack power controller has not got the EIP option enabled, contact your local distributor.
- Check that the 'IP Address', 'Subnet Mask' and 'Gateway' in the 'Comms' list are correct and unique for the network configuration in use.
- Ensure that the Ethernet/IP Master Module Input and Output Parameter mapping is correctly matched. If the master is attempting to read (input) or write (output) more data than has been registered on the EPack slave, using the iTools I/O Gateway Editor, the EPack slave will refuse the connection.
- If possible, replace a non-working device with a duplicate and retest.

EPack

Modbus

It is not within the scope of this manual to describe the MODBUS/TCP network and for this, refer to the information which may be found at http://www.modbus.org/.

Also refer to HA179770 EPower Communication Manual.

Overview

EPack controller units support the Modbus/TCP protocol using . This protocol embeds the standard Modbus protocol within an Ethernet TCP layer.

As most parameters are saved in the EPack controller unit's memory, the interface board must retrieve these values before it can start communicating on.

Protocol Basics

A data communication protocol defines the rules and structure of messages used by all devices on a network for data exchange. This protocol also defines the orderly exchange of messages, and error detection.

Modbus requires a digital communication network to have only one MASTER and one or more SLAVE devices. Either a single or multi-drop network is possible. The two types of communications networks are illustrated in the diagram below;

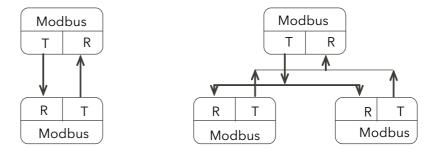


Figure 41 Single Serial Link and Multi Drop Serial Link

A typical transaction will consist of a request sent from the master followed by a response from the slave.

The message in either direction will consist of the following information;

Device Address	Function Code	Data	Checksum	End of Transmission
		- 4		

On a network of instruments this address is used to specify a particular instrument. Each instrument on a network must be set to a unique address, the available address range depending upon the network protocol. As EPack supports only Modbus/TCP protocol and discrimination on the network is carried out using the IP addresses of the connected instruments, the Modbus addresses of the devices are not used.

Each slave has a unique 'device address':

- The device address 0 is a special case and is used for messages broadcast to all slaves. This is restricted to parameter write operations.
- EPack controller supports a subset of Modbus function codes.
- The data will include instrument parameters referenced by a 'parameter address'
- The Device Address is a single byte (8-bits) unique to each device on the network.
- Function Codes are a single byte instruction to the slave describing the action to perform.
- The Data segment of a message will depend on the function code and the number of bytes will vary accordingly.
- Typically the data segment will contain a parameter address and the number of parameters to read or write.
- The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) is a checksum and is two bytes (16 bits) long.
- The End of Transmission segment (EOT) is a period of inactivity 3.5 times the single character transmission time. The EOT segment at the end of a message indicates to the listening device that the next transmission will be a new message and therefore a device address character.

Parameter Resolution

Modbus protocol limits data to 16 bits per parameter. This reduces the active range of parameters to 65536 counts. In EPack controller units this is implemented as -32767 (8001h) to +32767 (7FFFh).

The protocol is also limited to integer communication only. EPack controller units allow full resolution. In full resolution mode the decimal point position will be implied so that 100.01 would be transmitted as 10001. From this, and the 16 bit resolution limitation, the maximum value communicable with two decimal place resolution is 327.67. The parameter resolution will be taken from the slave user interface, and the conversion factor must be known to both master and slave when the network is initiated.

EPack controller units provide a special sub-protocol for accessing full resolution floating point data. This is described in "Access to Full Resolution Floating Point and Timing Data" on page 95.

Reading of Large Numbers

Large numbers being read over digital communications are scaled. For example, Setpoint can have the maximum value of 99,999 and is read as nnn.nK or 100,000 = 100.0K and 1,000,000 = 1000.0K.

EPack implements a dedicated scale parameter for each large parameter, allowing users to do specific scaling to suit their type of application.

Wait Period

There are several scenarios for which the slave devices on the network are unable to make a response:

- If the master attempts to use an invalid address then no slave device will receive the message.
- For a message corrupted by interference, the transmitted CRC will not be the same as the internally calculated CRC. The slave device will reject the command and will not reply to the master.

After a wait period, the master will re-transmit the command.

The wait period should exceed the instrument latency plus the message transmission time. A typical wait period, for a single parameter read, is 100ms.

Latency

The time taken for an EPack controller unit to process a message and start the transmission of a reply is called the latency. This does not include the time taken to transmit the request or reply.

The parameter functions read 1 word (function 03h), write 1 word (function 06h), and loopback (function 08h) are processed within a latency of between 20 and 120ms (typically 90).

For the parameter functions read n words (function 03h) and write n words (function 16h) the latency is indeterminate. The latency will depend on the instrument activity and the number of parameters being transferred and will take from 20 to 500ms.

Modbus Advanced Topics

Access to Full Resolution Floating Point and Timing Data

One of the main limitations of Modbus is that only 16 bit integer representations of data can normally be transferred. In most cases, this does not cause a problem, since appropriate scaling can be applied to the values without losing precision. Indeed all values displayable on the four-digit EPack controller front panel may be transferred in this way. However, this has the significant drawback that the scaling factor to be applied needs to be known at both ends of the communications link.

One further problem is that certain 'time' parameters, are always returned over the communications link in either 10th of seconds or 10th of minutes, configured via Instrument.Configuration.TimerRes. It is possible for long durations to overflow the 16 bit Modbus limit.

To overcome these problems, a sub protocol has been defined, using the upper portion of the Modbus address space (8000h and upwards), allowing full 32 bit resolution floating point and timer parameters. The upper area is known as the IEEE region.

This sub-protocol provides two consecutive Modbus addresses for all parameters. The base address for any given parameter in the IEEE region can easily be calculated by taking its normal Modbus address, doubling it, and adding 8000h. For example, the address in the IEEE region of the Target Setpoint (Modbus address 2) is simply:

2 x 2 + 8000h = 8004h = 32772 decimal

This calculation applies to any parameter that has a Modbus address.

Access to the IEEE area is made via block reads (Functions 3 & 4) and writes (Function 16). Attempts to use the 'Write a Word' (Function 6) operation will be rejected with a response. Furthermore, block reads and writes using the IEEE region should only be performed at even addresses, although no damage to the instrument will result in attempting access at odd addresses. In general, the 'number of words' field, in the Modbus frame, should be set to twice the value that it would have been for 'normal' Modbus.

The rules governing how the data in the two consecutive Modbus addresses are organized depending on the 'data type' of the parameter.

Data Types Used In EPack Power Controller Units

- Enumerated parameters are parameters which have a textual representation for their value on the user interface, for example, 'Parameter Status' – 'Good/Bad', 'Analog Operator Type' – 'Add', 'Subtract', 'Multiply', etc.
- Booleans are parameters which can have either a value '0' or a value '1'.
 Generally these parameters are enumerated. These are denoted as 'bool' in the table.
- Status words are generally only available over communications, and are used to group binary status information.
- Integer parameters are those that never include a decimal point however the instrument is configured, and do not refer to a time period or duration. These include such values as the instrument communications address and values used to set passwords, but not Process Variable and Setpoint related parameters, even if the display resolution of the instrument is set to no decimal places. These may be 8 or 16 bit and are denoted by 'uint8' or 'uint16' unsigned integers or 'int8' or 'int16' signed (+ or -) integers.
- Floating point parameters are those having a decimal point (or those which may be configured to have a decimal point), with the exception of parameters relating to time periods and duration. This includes Process Variable, Setpoints, Alarm Setpoints, etc and are denoted as type 'Float32' (IEEE 32-bit floating point parameters).
- Time Type parameters measure durations, for example, Alarm time above threshold, Timer elapsed time, etc. These are denoted by 'time32' in the parameter table.

Enumerated, Status Word, and Integer parameters

These use only the first word of the two Modbus addresses assigned to them in the IEEE area. The second word is padded with a value of 8000 hex.

Although 'Write a Word' (Function 6) is not permitted, this type of parameter may be written as a single 16 bit word using a Modbus 'Block Write' (Function 16). It is not necessary to add a padding value in the second address. Similarly, such parameters may be read using a Modbus 'Block Read' (Function 3 & 4) as single words, in which case the padding word will be omitted.

It is, however, necessary to pad the unused word when writing this sort of data types as part of a block containing other parameter values.

Floating Point Parameters

These use the IEEE format for floating point numbers, which is a 32 bit quantity. This is stored in consecutive Modbus addresses. When reading and writing to floats, it is necessary to read or write both words in a single block read or write. It is not possible, for example, to combine the results of two single word reads.

This format is used by most high level programming languages such as 'C' and BASIC, and many SCADA and instrumentation systems allow numbers stored in this format to be decoded automatically. The format is as follows:

BIT 31	30	23	22	0
	Sign	2 ⁷ 2 ⁰	2 ⁻¹ 2 ⁻²	2 ⁻²³

{--- -EXPONENT--- -}{----- -----FRACTION---- ---- ------}

Where value = (-1) Sign x 1.F x 2 E-127

Note: That in practice, when using C, IEEE floats may usually be decoded by placing the values returned over comms into memory and 'casting' the region as a float, although some compilers may require that the area be byte swapped high to low before casting. Details of this operation are beyond the scope of this manual.

The format used to transfer the IEEE number is as follows.

Lower Mod	Lower Modbus Address Higher Modbus Address		bus Address
MSB	LSB	MSB	LSB
Bits 31 - 24	Bits 16 - 23	Bits 15 - 8	Bits 7 - 0

For example, to transfer the value 1.001, the following values are transmitted (hexadecimal).

Lower Modbus Address		Higher Modbus Address			
MSB	LSB	MSB	LSB		
3F	80	20	C5		

Time Type Parameters

Time type values are returned over comms in 1/10 seconds or minutes. This can be changed in the SCADA table. Time durations are represented as a 32 bit integer number of milliseconds in the IEEE area. When reading and writing to time types, it is necessary to read or write both words in a single block read or write. It is not possible, for example, to combine the results of two single word reads.

The data representation is as follows.

Lower Modbus Address		Higher Modbus Address		
MSB	LSB	MSB	LSB	
Bits 31 - 24	Bits 16 - 23	Bits 15 - 8	Bits 7 - 0	

To create a 32 bit integer value from the two Modbus values, simply multiply the value at the lower Modbus address by 65536, and add the value at the Higher address. Then divide by 1000 to obtain a value in seconds, 60000 for a value in minutes, etc.

For example, the value of 2 minutes (120000 ms) is represented as follows:

Lower Modbus Address		Higher Modbus Address			
MSB	LSB	MSB	LSB		
00	01	D4	C0		

Instrument setup

It is recommended that the communications settings for each instrument are set up before connecting it to any Ethernet network. This is not essential but network conflicts may occur if the default settings interfere with equipment already on the network.

For the Ethernet instruments, however, there are several more: IP address, subnet mask, default gateway and DHCP enable.

Changing any one of these parameters may immediately move the instrument to a new network address. For this reason, it is recommended that such changes are made offline.

IP Addresses are usually presented in the form "abc.def.ghi.jkl". In the instrument Comms folder each element of the IP Address is shown and configured separately such that IPAdd1 = abc, IPAddr2 = def, IPAddr3 = ghi and IPAdr4 = jkl.

This also applies to the SubNet Mask, Default Gateway and Preferred Master IP Address.

Each Ethernet module contains a unique MAC address, normally presented as a 12 digit hexadecimal number in the format "aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff".

In EPack controller units MAC addresses are shown as three separate **decimal** values in iTools. MAC1 shows the first pair of digits **in decimal**, MAC2 shows the second pair of digits and so on.

Dynamic IP Addressing

IP addresses may be 'fixed' - set by the user, or dynamically allocated by a DHCP server on the network. When IP addresses are dynamically allocated the server uses the instrument MAC address to uniquely identify them.

To configure dynamic IP addressing, the user must first set the IPMode parameter to *DHCP*.

Once connected to the network and powered, the instrument will acquire its "IP address", "SubNet Mask" and "Default Gateway" from the DHCP Server automatically and display this information within a few seconds.

Note: If the DHCP server does not respond (in common with other Ethernet appliances in this situation) the unit will not be accessible via the network. Instead, the unit will default to an automatic IP mode with an IP address in the range of 169.254.xxx.xxx.

Fixed IP Addressing

IP addresses may be 'fixed' - meaning the user manually enters the IP address and SubNet Mask values, which will remain unchanged, before connecting the instrument to the network.

To configure fixed IP addressing, the user must first set the IPMode parameter to *Fixed*.

Then set the IP address and SubNet Mask as required, to configure a fixed IP address, see "Comms menu" on page 121.

Default Gateway

The **"Comms"** folder also includes configuration settings for **"Default Gateway"**, these parameters will be set automatically when Dynamic IP Addressing is used. When fixed IP addressing is used these settings are only required if the instrument needs to communicate wider than the local area network i.e. over the Internet.

Preferred Master

The **"Comms"** folder also includes configuration settings for **"Preferred Master"**. Setting this address to the IP Address of a particular PC will help to ensure that one of the available Ethernet sockets will be reserved for that PC.

iTools Setup

iTools configuration package, version V7 or later, may be used to configure Ethernet communications.

The following instructions configure an Ethernet.

Automatic Configuration

Both EPack power controllers and iTools software support automatic discovery of network connected instruments. iTools software display all instruments connected to the network automatically. To connect and communicate with a selected instrument start iTools, click the *Add* button and select the relevant instrument.

Manual Configuration



To include a Host Name/Address within the iTools scan:-

- 1. Ensure iTools is NOT running before taking the following steps
- 2. Within Windows, select 'Control Panel'
- 3. In control panel select 'iTools'
- 4. Within the iTools configuration settings select the 'TCP/IP' tab
- 5. Click the 'Add' button to add a new connection
- 6. Enter a name for this TCP/IP connection
- 7. Click the 'Add' button to add the host name or IP address of the instrument in the 'Host Name/ Address' section
- 8. Click 'OK' to confirm the new Host Name/IP Address you have entered
- 9. Click 'OK' to confirm the new TCP/IP port you have entered
- 10. You should now see the TCT/IP port you have configured within the TCP/IP tab of the iTools control panel settings

iTools is now ready to communicate with an instrument at the Host Name/IP Address you have configured.

<u>File D</u> evice	Explorer	View	Options .	Window	Help								
ew File Open File	📬 Load	Save	Print	Scan	4 Add	× Remove	Access	Q Views	-	💰 Help	-		
Graphical Wiring	Paramet	er Explorer	🔽 Fieldbus I/	O Gateway	Watch/	Recipe 🛛 🖁	OP <u>C</u> Scop	e ≂©iToo	ols <u>S</u> ecure	e			
VEPack.192-168-	255-3-502-I	D255-EPac	EPacl	k.192-168-25	5-3-502-ID2	55-EPack - I	Parameter Exp	lorer (Con	nms)				• •
				→ ~] (iii									-14
				1									
			Nam		Descriptio		o the link-local		A	ddress 3136		Vired From	<u> </u>
			Host SBV		MBUS na		h the link-local	network.	_		epk0A00028D0C45 3US Epack(0A00028D0C45)		
		· ·	/ IPM				(static - dhcp)		-	3109	Fixed (0) •		
Browse 🔍 Find				~~~		of the instru				3114	192,168,255,3		
Comms				bNetMask		ubNet mask			-	3115	255.255.255.2		
		^		fault Gateway			ay IP address			3116	192,168,0,1		
			/ IP_0		IP addres					3102	192.168.255.3		
SRVname				net_Mask	IP addres	s of the subr	net mask			3103	255.255.255.2		
IPMode			🥖 Defa	ault_Gateway		s of the defa	ult gateway			3104	192.168.0.1		
IP			MAC		MAC add					3106	10		
cSubNetN	lask	=	MAC		MAC add					3107	36098		
CDefault C	iateway		MAC		MAC add					3108	17676		
IP address			🖉 Timo			meout in ms.			_	3110	5000		E
Subnet M			Falb		Falback1 Falback2				_	3112	1		
			Falb	iack2	Falback2 Timeout F					3113	0 Off (0) 🔻		
	ateway		/ Enli			napie the ethernet	Keels			3117	Auto Nego (0) *		
MAC12				Status		P stack statu			-	3153	Running (3) *		
MAC34				TO Status			» Driginator statu			3160	Unknow (13) *		
MAC56				OT Status	Ethemet I	P Driginator	to Target statu	, ,	-	3161	Unknow (13) *		
				NetworkStatu						3158	NoConnect (1)		
- Fallback1			EIP	ModuleStatus	Ethernet I	P module sta			-	3159	Run (2) -		
Fallback2			EIP	cLink1Speed	Current sp	eed of the e	themet link on	Port1.		3154	100 Mb (1) 💌		
EnTimeou	+		EIP_	cLink1Mode	Current m		hemet link on l			3155	FulDuplex (1)		
LinkSpeed				cLink2Speed			themet link on			3156	10 Mb (0) 🔹		
				cLink2Mode			thernet link on l	Port2.		3157	HalfDuplex (0) 🔻		
				Timeout Counter	TCP Com	ms Timeout i	n ms.			3150	4998		
🔁 EIP_TO_St		-	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	t ounder	CTDP Coor	-tar				3060	°		•
	•												

Figure 42 iTools - Ethernet Communications Parameter

PROFINET

PROFINET is the open industrial Ethernet based networking solution for automation. It is similar to PROFIBUS in that it enables distributed IO control from a PLC. PROFINET uses TCP/IP and IT standards, and is, in effect, real-time Ethernet. It enables the integration of existing Fieldbus systems like PROFIBUS, DeviceNet, and Interbus, without changes to existing devices.

PROFINET IO was developed for real time (RT) and isochronous real time (IRT) communication with the decentral periphery. The designations RT and IRT merely describe the real-time properties for the communication within PROFINET IO.

There are four stages to setting up a network:

- "PROFINET Wiring" on page 102
- "Setting up the EPack Controller for PROFINET" on page 103
- "Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange" on page 110
- "Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data)" on page 111

NOTICE

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• When ordering the product, select the appropriate communication protocol or make sure it is available as a software upgrade option.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-functional equipment.

The PROFINET protocol and the EtherNet/IP protocol cannot be used together. Select one of the appropriate Protocol among the different options

PROFINET protocol is available as software upgrade option on product with Modbus TCP communication protocol and Ethernet/IP protocol.

EPack supports the Modbus/TCP protocol. whatever the communication protocol is.

PROFINET Features

- 10/100Mbs Auto-negotiation
- Galvanically isolated bus electronics
- Field pluggable option
- Polled and Explicit I/O messaging connection
- PROFINET IO Device version: V2.4
- Device Type: Compact field device
- Conformance class: CC-A
- Real Time class: RT-1
- Supported Net Load class: Class 1
- Number of slots: 17 (see description below)
- Minimum Device interval (cycle time): 16msNumber of available modules: 43 (4 generic, 39 dedicated)

PROFINET Wiring

PROFINET capability is provided by the RJ45 Ethernet port, Network Communications (page 56).

The PROFINET port is a 100Mb, full duplex operation port and should be connected via an industrial switch to a Master device (eg PLC) with Cat5e (straight through) cable via the standard RJ45 connector (maximum length 100m).

The interconnecting cables should be fitted with plugs provided with an outer metallic shell with the shell connected to the wire screen of the cable.

Notes:

- Although CC-A requirements can be met by the use of ordinary Ethernet Switches (supporting the VLANs), it is strongly recommended to use managed Industrial Switches (Managed Switches, e.g. MOXA EDS-408A-PN, Scalance X204IRT). This will allow future migration to the Conformance Class CC-B without the need to change your Network infrastructure ("Network Diagnostic" with SNMP, LLDP-MIB for the "Device Replacement without Engineering Tool").
- The MAC address of the device is stated on the label side, and on the Displays (Comms menu). To ensure the 'Neighborhood detection' functionality with LLDP, each physical Ethernet Port requires its own MAC address. Therefore, P1 uses the device MAC address incremented by one and by two for P2.

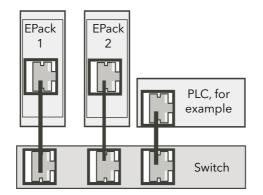


Figure 43 PROFINET Wiring - Multiple controllers

iTools Connection

Connect the EPack Controller to the PROFINET Configuration tool and to iTools (see example below).

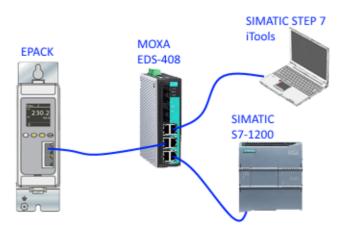


Figure 44 Configuration Tool Connections

Setting up the EPack Controller for PROFINET

A PROFINET IO Device, in this case EPack, is generally commissioned by using a PROFINET configuration tool (typically STEP 7 included in the SIEMENS TIA Portal). Figure 44 shows a single controller but multiple controllers can be connected.

The first thing to do is to identify the PROFINET Device (EPack) on the Network. This is done automatically with the PROFINET tool which uses a specific DCP service for this purpose (DCP Identity Request).

Once done, you can affect the "Device Name" and the IP address configuration of a particular EPack controller. This is also done with the PROFINET tool by following the procedure below.

Commissioning using DCP protocol

This section describes 'Device Name' and 'IP Configuration' assignment.

A PROFINET Device is characterised by its 'Device Name' (named also 'Station Name') and its IP address.

The configuration of a PROFINET device is based on the DCP protocol which is used specifically to assign the 'Device Name' or to assign the IP configuration (IP address, Network Mask ...).

An EPack which is just 'Out of the box' has its 'Device Name' and its IP configuration address set to Null by default as shown in Figure 47 (the MAC address is used initially by the DCP protocol for setting up the 'Device Name').

Note: EPack indicates that the 'Device Name' is reset by displaying 'No Device Name !'.



Figure 45 EPack 'Comms' screen display 'as-delivered' (Device Name = "", IP Configuration = Null).

During the system set up, the PROFINET configuration tool first identifies the existing devices in the system (by sending out a 'DCPIdentity.req'), shown below in Figure 46. This example uses the © Siemens TIA Portal / STEP 7 ('Update accessible devices' function).



Figure 46 Example of EPack (not yet commissioned) MAC address using DCP The next step assigns the 'IP Configuration' and the 'Device Name'. This operation can be performed by clicking on the 'Online & diagnostics' as shown in Figure 47.

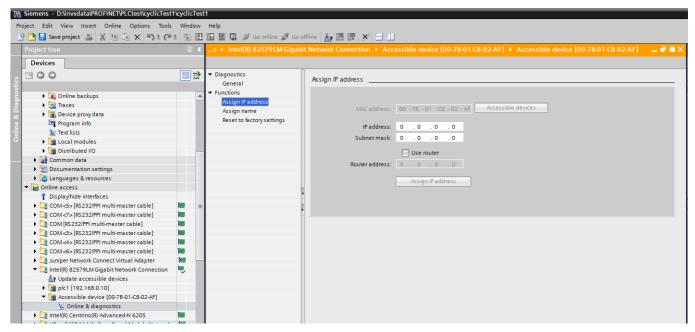


Figure 47 IP Configuration assignment and Device Name assignment with the "TIA Portal"

Note: The Default Gateway can be changed in the same way (named 'Router address' in this example).

Commissioning using 'Fixed' IP Mode'

This section describes setting of an IP address manually.

As mentioned above, the DCP Protocol is the basis of PROFINET.

However, in some cases, it could be useful to set an IP address and a Subnet Mask manually. For example, using 'iTools' configuration package without having previously configured your EPack with a PROFINET configuration tool see Commissioning using DCP protocol (page 103).

This can be done by selecting the 'Fixed' IP Mode instead the 'DCP' protocol on the front face of the device during the 'Quickcode' operation - see Quickcode (page 65).

Finally, the DCP protocol always stays active as it is a main part of PROFINET. This means that the next time that the DCP protocol re-allocates a new IP address, this one will overwrite the previous IP address manually set.

Note: The DHCP mode is not accessible when the PROFINET protocol is active on EPack.

Setting up the IP configuration via iTools

The IP configuration can be changed through 'iTools', but this method is not recommended with PROFINET, especially because the IO Controller/PLC or the Supervisor cannot be informed of these changes.

The PROFINET 'ecosytem' must be privileged for this type of operation (PROFINET Configuration tool using the DCP protocol).

Device Name

The Device Name is used to identify a Device on a PROFINET node.

Device Name via the DCP protocol

The Device Name is written to the Device by the PROFINET configuration tool via the DCP protocol (see "Setting up the EPack Controller for PROFINET" on page 103).

The length can not exceed 240 characters, only the lower case characters are authorized to be used (see Figure 48).

This field shall be coded as data type OctetString with 1 to 240 octets. The definition of RFC 5890 and the following syntax applies:

- 1 or more labels, separated by [.]
- Total length is 1 to 240
- Label length is 1 to 63
- Labels consist of [a-z0-9-]
- Labels do not start with [-]
- Labels do not end with [-]
- The first label does not have the form "port-xyz" or "port-xyz-abcde" with a, b, c, d, e, x, y, z = 0...9, to avoid wrong similarity with the field AliasNameValue
- Station-names do not have the form n.n.n.n, n = 0...999

Figure 48 Device Name encoding (extract from the PROFINET Specification IEC 61158-6-10 & 4.3.1.4.15.2) The Device Name respecting these rules can be read or written in EPack by using the PROFINET tool (e.g. with the TIA Portal/STEP 7).

Display of the Device Name on the EPack screen

The display of EPack allows the last eleven characters to be displayed (see Figure 49).

However, if the length of the "Device Name" is greater than eleven, the full "Device Name" is displayed by scrolling.

Note: If the length is greater than 64, only the last 61 characters are displayed followed by three dots.

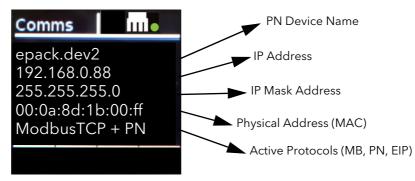


Figure 49 Display of the Device Name on EPack (e.g. "epack.dev2").

Display of the Device Name in iTools

The last 64 characters of the Device Name are displayed in iTools in the 'Comms Functional Block' through the 'PN_DevName' parameter (read only).

Other DCP Services

In addition to the assignment of the 'Device Name' and the 'IP Configuration', the DCP protocol provides the following services for EPack.

Flash LED (also called "Flash Once")

The DCP service provides easy visual identification of a Device among a group of Devices.

For this, the Ethernet LEDs and the EPack display (blink by inverted color) flash with a duration of three seconds and a frequency of 1Hz (500ms on, 500ms off).

Reset to factory

The DCP service allows the IP Configuration to be reset (to 0) and the Device Name (reset to "") to its as-delivered condition, the device returns to its state shown in Figure 47.

EPack PN Modules

Commissioning directly 'out-of-the-box'

EPack is provided with a configuration tool named "iTools".

However, as not all PROFINET users are familiar with this kind of tool, but are familiar with their own PROFINET ecosystem tools (e.g. TIA Portal), particular attention has been paid so that the EPack's PROFINET Modules can be directly usable by the PROFINET configuration tool, and this for the most of applications.

The other applications, that need some specific EPack parameters, are covered by the IOGW and the new RIOGW PN's Modules (configured by 'iTools' in this case).

The use of the standard PN Modules instead of the IOGW present the following advantages:

- No need to use an additional 'non PROFINET' configuration tool,
- Ethernet Bandwidth optimization (only the desired IOData 'payload' is used during the cyclic exchanges),
- IO Controller resource optimization (only the useful IO Controller registers are employed).

List of the standard PROFINET Modules used by EPack

The following PROFINET Modules can be used directly to configure an EPack IO
Device, the detailed definition of each parameter is provided in this Manual.

Module name (EPack parameter)	In / Out attribute (from PLC view)	EPack Type (Single, Two, Three Phase)	Size (Bytes)
FaulDet.AlarmStatus1	In	All	2
FaultDet.AlarmStatus2	In	All	2
FaultDet.AlarmAck	Out	All	2
Control.Main.PV	In	All	2
Control.Main.SP	In	All	2
Control.Diag.OP	In	All	2
Control.Diag.Status	In	All	2
Control.Limit.SP1	Out	All	2
Energy.Energy	In	All	2
Network.Meas.Vline	In	All	2
Network.Meas.Vline2	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.Vline3	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Frequency	In	All	2
Network.Meas.I	In	All	2

Communications

Module name (EPack parameter)	In / Out attribute (from PLC view)	EPack Type (Single, Two, Three Phase)	Size (Bytes)
Network.Meas.I2	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.I3	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.lavg	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.V	In	All	2
Network.Meas.V2	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.V3	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.Vavg	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.P	In	All	2
Network.Meas.PBurst	In	All	2
Network.Meas.Z	In	All	2
Network.Meas.Z2	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.Z3	In	2PH & 3PH	2
Network.Meas.Vsq	In	All	2
Network.Meas.VsqBurst	In	All	2
Network.Meas.lsq	In	All	2
Network.Meas.VsqBurst	In	All	2
SetProv.Remote1	In/Out	All	2 x 2
SetProv.Remote2	In/Out	All	2 x 2
SetProv.RemSelect	In/Out	All	2 x 2
SetProv.SPSelect	In	All	2
UsrVal1	Out	All	2
UsrVal2	Out	All	2

Notes:

- The parameters with the double attribute 'In/Out' are broken down into two parameters 'In' and 'Out', to avoid confusion (Modules vs Slots assignment). They can be used simultanuously in the application.
- 2. The EPack parameters, named registers here, are comprised of two bytes by inheritance from the Modbus TCP protocol where they come from.

Fieldbus I/O Gateway IOGW Modules (Generic Modules)

As shown above, each time that it is possible, it is preferable to use the standard EPack PROFINET Modules.

However, as not all EPack parameters are available through the standard Modules, sometimes it is necessary to use the IOGW (or RIOGW), which allows the acquisition of some selected EPacks parameters by using the configuration tool named 'iTools' (see "Fieldbus Gateway" chapter for more details).

The two IOGW Modules are defined like this:

Module name (EPack IOGW)	In / Out attribute (from PLC view)	EPack Type (Single, Two, Three Phase)	Size (Bytes/Reg)
Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway	In	All	64/32
Fieldbus Output I/O Gateway	Out	All	32/16

Reduced Fieldbus I/O Gateway RIOGW Modules (Generic Module)

The reduced IOGW consists of the first quarter of a standard IOGW, the last three quarters is removed - cut short - to provide the reduction.

This 'truncated' IOGW allows the reduction of the Ethernet Bandwidth by reducing the data exchanged cyclically and to reduce the register footprint of the IO Controller (versus the standard IOGW).

The two RIOGW Modules are defined like this:

Module name (EPack RIOGW)	In / Out attribute (from PLC view)	EPack Type (Single, Two, Three Phase)	Size (Bytes/Reg)
Reduced Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway	ln	All	16/8
Reduced Fieldbus Output I/O Gateway	Out	All	8/4

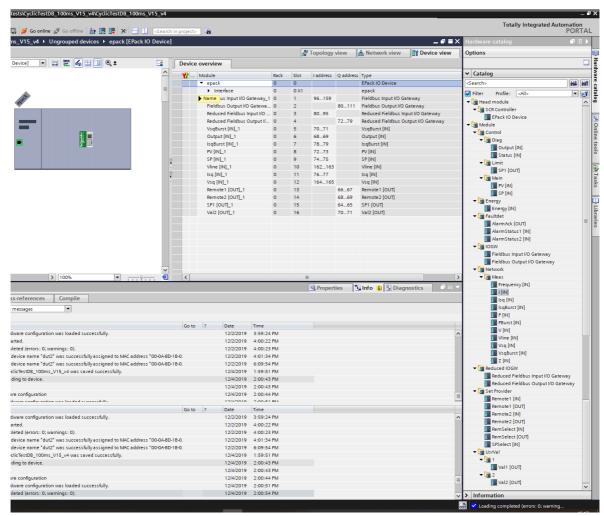


Figure 50 Siemens TIA Portal showing EPack modules and slots

EPack PROFINET Slots

General EPack's Slot organization

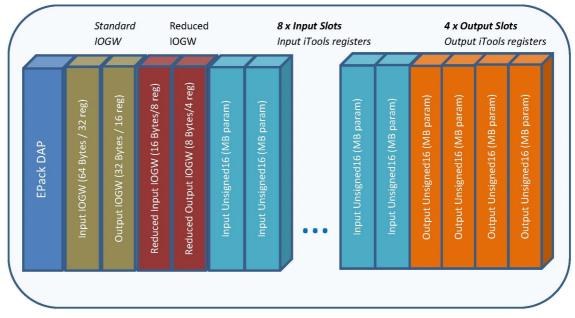


Figure 51 EPack Slots Configuration

EPack has 17 Slots, DAP comprised, they are organized as represented in the figure above.

The standard EPack Modules, which represent the more relevant iTools parameters, would be connected into the 8 Input Slots and 4 Output Slots having an "Unsigned16" format.

Two Slots are dedicated for the IOGW Modules and two others for the RIOGW Modules.

All Slots can be combined together, some holes can be left also, as long as the Slot 'signature' is respected (for instance, an IOGW Module can't be connected to a standard Input Slot, the TIA Portal will forbid it anyway).

For Ethernet Bandwidth optimization and PLC resources optimization, it is recommended to use the IOGW or the RIOGW only when the standard Modules do not satisfy the requirement.

Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange

During the PROFINET commissioning, the principle is to 'plug' the first module (representing the "Input I/O Gateway") into the slot 1 and the second one (representing the "Output I/O Gateway") into the slot 2 (at this stage, it is assumed that the 'Device Name' and the 'IP Configuration' has already been set up).

This operation is performed with the PROFINET configuration tool based on the GSDML file (e.g. with the TIA Portal/STEP 7, see Figure 52 and Figure 53).

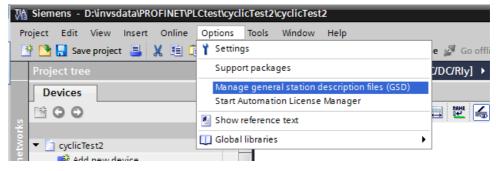
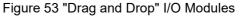


Figure 52 Loading the EPack GSDML file into STEP7

Figure 53 below shows "Drag and Drop" of the Input and Output Modules (Input and Output I/O Gateway image) respectively into Slot 1 and Slot 2 of EPack.

٧i	Siemens - C:\Users\SESA42566	Achilles\achilles_ATP_PN_prj_EPack_mono\achilles_ATP_PM	_prj_EPack_mono								- • ×
E	Project Edit View Insert Qnline Options Tools Window Help Totally Integrated Automation										
10	🗄 🎦 🔒 Save project ا 👗 👔	🛅 🗙 🍤 ± (🖅 🐁 🛄 🌆 🔛 🖓 🖉 Go online 🖉	Go offline 🛛 🏭 🚺	📑 💉 🖃 🛄 <search in="" project=""></search>	6					POR	TAL
	Project tree 🛛 🔳 🖣	achilles_ATP_PN_prj_EPack_mono Ungrouped devi	es 🕨 epack_2 [E	Pack IO Device]					_ # = ×	Hardware catalog 🛛 🖬 🛙	
	Devices				P Tor	ology vi	ew 占	Network	view N Device view	Options	60
		🏕 epack_2 [EPack IO Device] 💌 😅 💹 📕	🔍 ± 📑 🗍			lology ti		neenon		options	THE REAL
2			≪ ± =	Device overview						4	<u> </u>
ģ			4	🐈 Module	Rack	Slot	I address	Q address	туре	Catalog	Nap.
eta	 achilles_ATP_PN_prj_EP Add new device 			 epack_2 	0	0			EPack IO Device	<search> MI</search>	MT 👸
3	Devices & networks		=		0	0 X1			epack	Filter Profile: <all></all>	1
i i i	a [CPU 1212C AC/D	Nace		Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway_1		1	70133		Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway	+ In Head module	- B
1×	Ungrouped devices	w		Fieldbus Output I/O Gatewa	~	2		6697	Fieldbus Output I/O Gateway	▼ m Module	
ă	Security settings				0	3				Control	01
	Common data				0	4				Energy	8
	Documentation setti			Vline [IN]_1	0	5	194195	_	Vline [IN]	Faultdet	-
	Languages & resourc.				0	6	192193		V [IN]	- IOGW	ne
	 Online access 			I [IN]_1	0	7	6869		I [IN]	Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway	6
	Display/hide interfaces		-		0	8				Fieldbus Output I/O Gateway	0
	COM <6> [RS232/PPI)		1 () () () () () () () () () (0	9				Im Network	-
	COM <7> [RS232/PPI 15				0 0	10 11				Reduced IOGW	- 12
	▶ 🚺 COM <3> [RS232/PPI) 000				0	11				Set Provider	Tas
	🕶 🛅 Intel(R) Ethernet Con 📾				0	12		e1 e5	Remote2 [OUT]	UsrVal	ks
	PUpdate accessibl.				0	13		0465	kemote2 [001]		
	Display more inf				0	14					
	🕨 🧾 PANGP Virtual Ethern 🕅				0	15					÷
	🕨 🎦 Zscaler Network Ada 🐻				•					1	ran



Once this has been completed, compile the configuration and download it to the IO Controller (PLC). The cyclic exchanges will then start with the IO Device, so with EPack (see Figure 54 below).

licT	est2\cyclicTest2
Т	ools Window Help
±	(🖆 🖥 🛄 🚹 🚆 🗛 💋 Go online 🖉
	cyclicTest2 PIC1 [CPU 1212C AC/DC/F
•	👬 epack 💌 🕎 🗓

Figure 54 The compiled configuration is downloaded to EPack

Note: The IO cycle can be adjusted to 16ms (by default) up to 512ms.

Acyclic Data Exchange (Record Data)

Acyclic data exchange (or Record Data) is used to transfer data that does not require continuous updates.

It is possible to access any parameter in the EPack controller unit by this means, regardless of whether it has been included in the PROFINET input/output data assembly.

Acyclic data are transmitted via UDP/IP with the RPC protocol. For this, PROFINET provides "Read" and "Write" services of data.

For addressing Record Data services, the combination of API/Slot/Subslot/Index values is used. The Modbus address of the EPack parameter to read or write is passed through the Index value.

Modbus addresses are listed in the iTools Parameter Explorer.

This section describes how to access a variable using PROFINET in acyclic mode.

PROFINET uses the following parameter to access a variable in acyclic mode:

- API
- The Slot and Subslot
- Index

To access a parameter in acyclic mode, you first need to know its Modbus address. This may be accessed by selecting the parameter from the Parameter Explorer list shown in Address column.

The figure below shows an alternative way to access a parameter. This uses the Graphical Wiring Editor. The Modbus address is shown in Address column. Right click on the parameter to open the parameter help window.

Right click on the parameter to open the parameter help window.

operties Help	
Parameter	
List:	IO.LgcIO.LA
Name:	ЮТуре
Description:	1/О Туре
Address (canonical):	21038 (522EH)
Address (actual):	21038 (522EH)
Comment:	
~	
_sead/Write	eter is currently both readable and writable.
Sead/Write This param	eter is currently both readable and wittable.
° This param	52
This param	

Figure 55 Parameter Access using the Graphical Wiring Editor

From this address, use the following conversion to get the PROFINET way of addressing a parameter:

- The API is always 0 (Zero)
- The Slot is always 1 (One)
- The Subslot is always 1 (One)
- The Index will be the Modbus-address you found previously in iTools

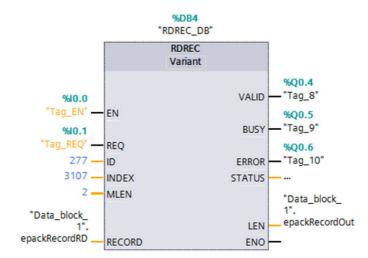
Acyclic data exchanges, Step 7 (TIA Portal) program block

The RDREC and the WRREC function blocks are used to respectively read and write the record data, which allows to access to the overall parameters of EPack.

The Modbus address of the parameter to be read is set in the INDEX entry, the ID value has to match with the Hardware ID of your device incremented by one.

See example below where the Modbus address is 3107 and the HW ID is 277.

The Hardware ID can be found in the Device View tab as shown in Figure 57.



...DB1 > PLC1 [CPU 1212C AC/DC/Rly] > Distributed I/O > PROFINET IO-System (100): PN/IE_1 > epack h Network view Device view 🚰 Topology view 🔽 🖽 🕎 🚾 🚾 🔍 🛨 depack Device overview ~ Rack Module 0 epac GSDML-011A-E1A0-EUR... 0 Fieldbus Input I/O Gateway 1 0 Fieldbus Output I/O Gatewa... 0 selyreider > 100% • < 111 -< 🛄 Info **B** Diagnostics 🔍 Properties IO tags System constants Texts General General Hardware identifier Catalog information PROFINET interface [X1] Hardware identifier Identification & Maintenance 276 Hardware identifier

Figure 56 Reading one EPack parameter, using RDREC function block of STEP 7

Figure 57 Hardware Identifier value

Constraints on the Parameters

The parameter in acyclic-mode follows the same limitation as the parameters in the Fieldbus I/O gateway: 16 bits length and they follow the same scaling, Configuring the Cyclic (IO Data) Data Exchange (page 110)

Data is returned as 'scaled integers', such that 999.9 is returned or sent as 9999; 12.34 is encoded as 1234. The control program in the PROFINET master must convert the numbers into floating point values if required.

The GSD File

The PROFINET GSDML (General Stations Description) file for EPack controller has the generic name GSDML-V[GsdVersion?]-Eurotherm-EPack-[dateOfCreation].xml and is available from your supplier, or electronically by going to Web site https://www.eurotherm.com/en.

The GSD file is designed to automate the PROFINET network configuration process by precisely defining the required device parameter information. Software configuration tools utilise the GSD file to configure an PROFINET network.

Alarm Notification

EPack has the ability to send "Alarm Notification" when an alarm is raised; the I/O Controller acknowledges this Alarm Notification request (e.g. "Missing Mains Indication" when the Mains [power supply] is off).

EPack uses the "Channel Diagnosis" to transmit its Diagnosis Alarm, which is made of a single 16 Bit "ErrorType" for each alarm, defined in the "Manufacturer Specific" range (0x0100-0x7FFF), which starts at 0x0200 (512d) for EPack (e.g. 512 stands for "Missing Main", 513 for "Thyristor Short Circuit", and so on).

The definition of the different "ErrorType" is provided in the "human readable" format in the GSDML file and are summarized in the table below (Alarm Status Word 1/2).

When an Alarm Notification is raised, it is managed by the IO Controller which hands it over to its alarm buffer. If this alarm disappears, EPack sends a new request to the IO Controller to remove it from its alarm buffer.

EPack can treat several alarms simultaneously, but the Profinet Alarm Buffer size is limited to two entries, when an entry is freed and another alarm is still present in EPack, this second one is sent to the IO Controller.

As described above, the Alarms are explicitly described in the GSDML file, an additional field is used to provide the first level of suggested action to manage this alarm. This is illustrated below through the TIA Portal (Step 7) screenshot example.

The languages currently supported are English (default), German, Spanish and French (the TIA Portal is set up with the corresponding language).

EPack allows the possibility to disable the sending of user alarms through the Channel Diagnostics. See PNAlarmsEn parameter in "Communications Configuration" on page 145.

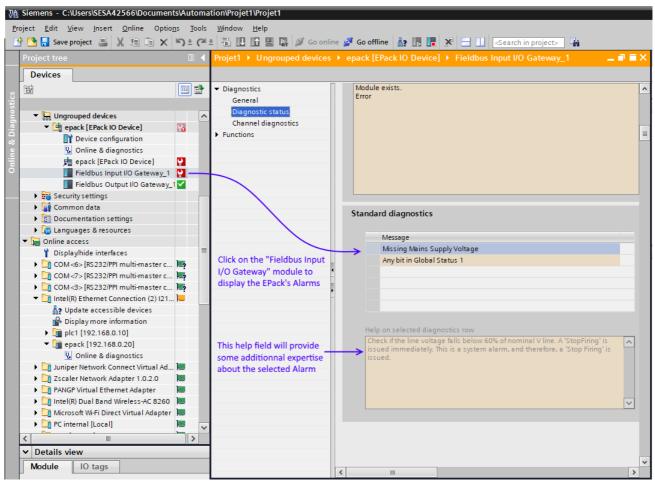


Table 3: EPack's Profinet Alarm lis	ist (see GSDML file for details)
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------

	Alarm Status Word 1 (LSB)		
Bit	Alarm Origin		
0	Missing Mains Indication		
1	Thyristor Short Circuit Indication		
2	Reserved		
3	Networks dips Indication		
4	Frequency out-of-range Indication		
5	No longer used from V6.xx		
6	Chop-Off Indication		
7	No longer used from V6.xx		
8	No longer used from V6.xx		
9	No longer used from V6.xx		
10	No longer used from V6.xx		
11	No longer used from V6.xx		
12	No longer used from V6.xx		
13	Reserved		
14	Analog IP Over Current Indication		
15	External Input Indication		

Alarm Status Word 2 (MSB)			
Bit	Alarm Origin		
0	No longer used from V6.xx		
1	No longer used from V6.xx		
2	No longer used from V6.xx		
3	No longer used from V6.xx		
47	Reserved		
8	Any bit in Global Status 0		
9	Any bit in Global Status 1		
10	Any bit in Global Status 2		
11	Any bit in Global Status 3		
12 15	Reserved		

Configuration from the Front Panel

At power up or after quitting the Quickcode menu, the unit initializes and then enters the summary page (Figure 59) showing the real-time values of the two parameters configured, see "Instrument Display configuration" on page 172 for details.



Figure 59 Initialization screens

Menu Pages

Operating the return key opens the first page of the menu, the content of which depends on the current access level and on the number of options enabled.

The descriptions below assume 'Configuration' level access is selected. (Additional menu options appear when 'Engineering' level access is selected and are described in this section).

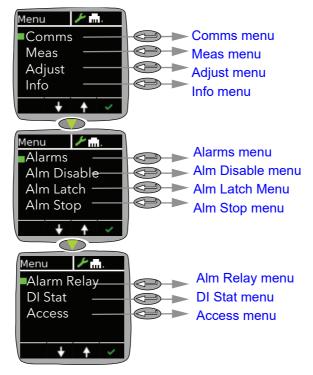
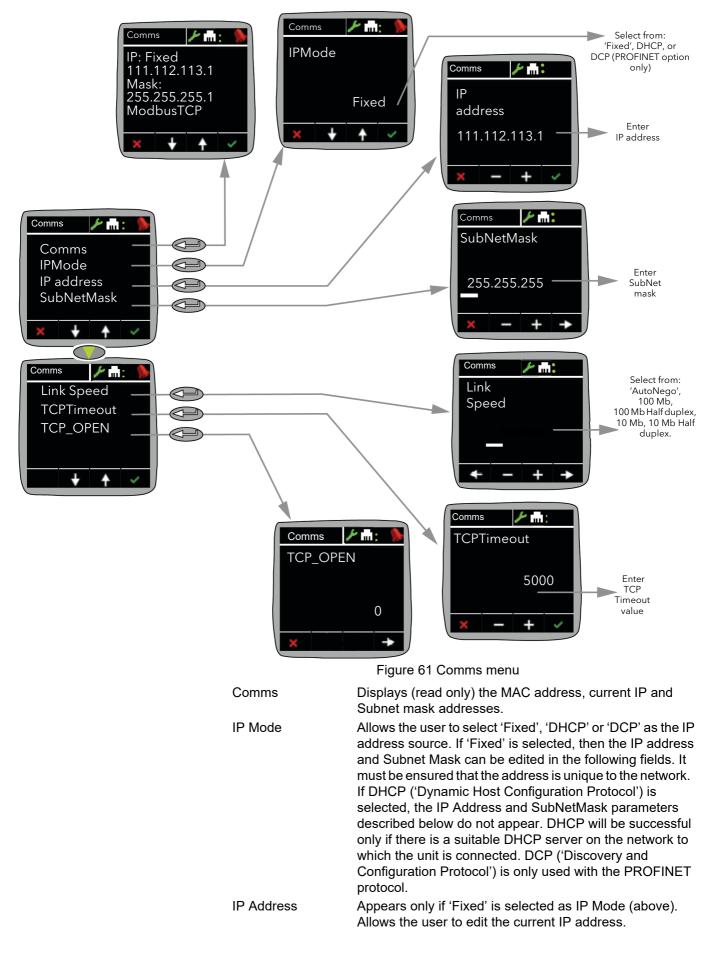


Figure 60 Menu options

Comms menu

This allows the following communications parameters to be viewed or configured. In Engineer mode the Comms menu is read-only.



	Example: To set an IP address of 111.112.113.1, use the up and down arrow pushbuttons to set the first section of the address to 111. Use the enter key, and then the up and down pushbuttons to set the second section to 112. Use the enter key, and then the up and down pushbuttons to set the third section to 113. Use the enter key, and then the up and down pushbuttons to set the fourth section to 1 (not 01 or 001). Use the Enter key to quit Edit mode. If any section is already as required, it can be skipped by using the Enter key.
SubNetMask	Set the SubNet mask as described above for the IP address.
Link Speed	Select the required link type and speed.
TCPTimeout	Is used to set the timeout period, (measured in milliseconds) that is used to close any open TCP connections not being used by the master, which originally opened the connection.
	Adjust in Configuration mode. The default value is 5000ms.
TCP_Open	TCP Open displays the quantity of live, open connections.

Note: For details about subnet masks, see (iTools wiring).

Meas menu

This menu allows the user to view a number of measured values in real time. For further details, see 'Network Meas Menu' (page 189).

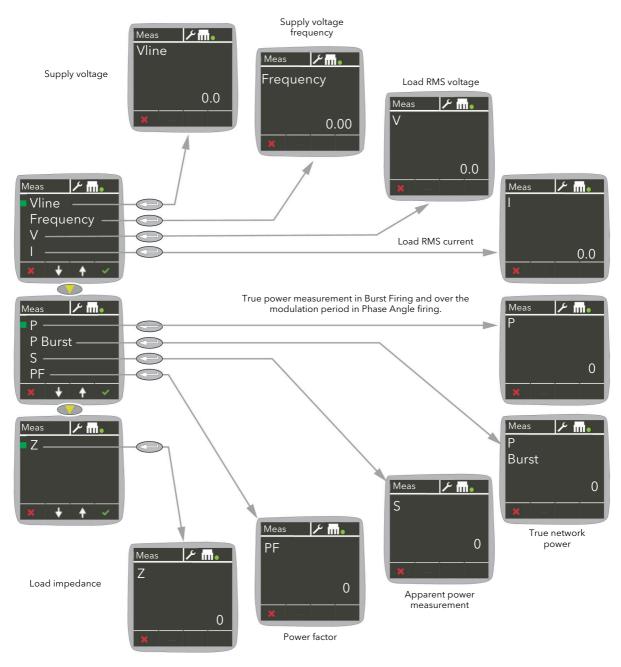
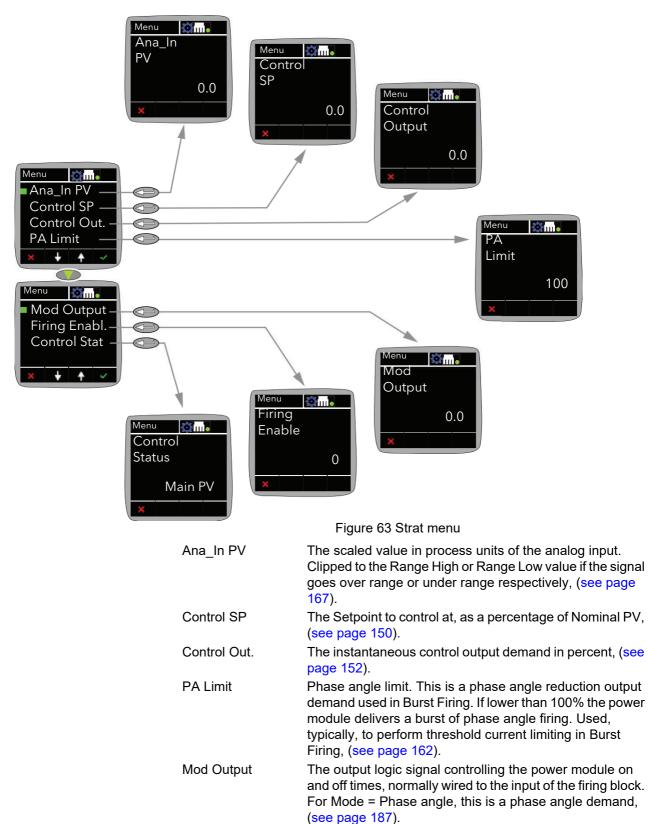


Figure 62 Meas menu

Strat menu

The Strat menu is only available in Engineer mode. It allows the user to view a number of control strategy parameters in real time.



Firing Enabl.

Control Stat

Main PV

Enables/disables firing. Must be wired to a non-zero value

Transfr

The transfer input is being used as the input to the control strategy.

Limit1(2)(3)Control limiting is currently active using limit PV1(2)(3) and limit SP 1(2)(3).

Adjust menu

This menu allows a number of network and firing output parameters to be set up, as well as Analog input type.

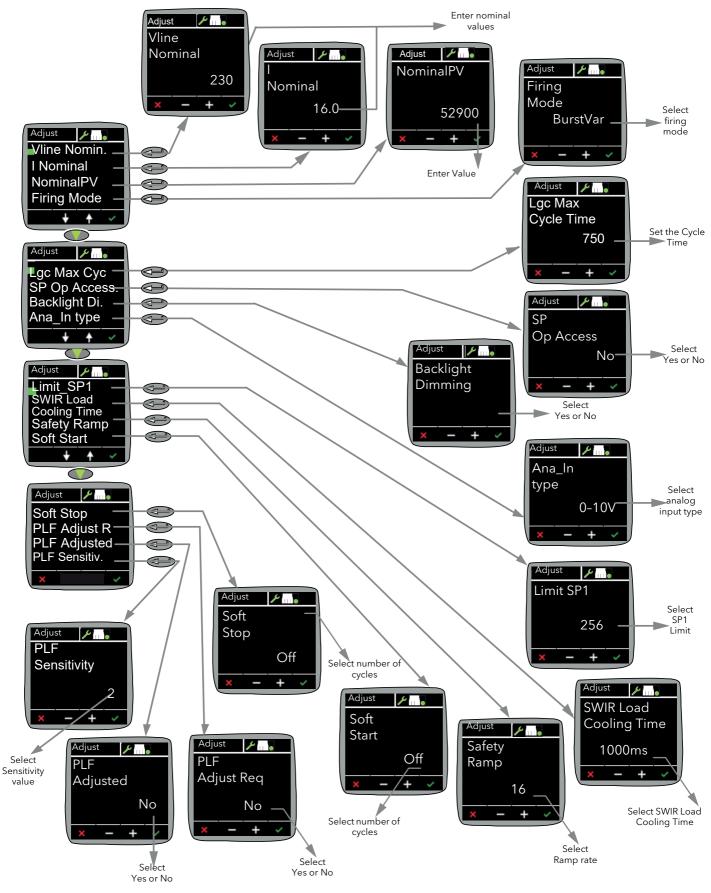


Figure 64 Adjust Menu

	- 5
Vline Nominal	Line voltage nominal value (Line to line for all listed config- urations, except Star with Neutral (4S) which is Line to neutral), see Load Configurations (page 50).
l Nominal	Nominal current supplied to the load.
NominalPV	Nominal Process Variable. Defines the nominal value for each control type. For example, for Vsq control, you must wire Vsq from the network block to the MainPV and set NominalPV to the nominal value you expect for Vsq—
Load Coupling	typically this could be VloadNominal * VloadNominal. Allows you to specify how the load is configured on your in- stallation. Select one of the following; 3D (closed Delta), 3S (Star without Neutral), 4S (Star with Neutral) and 6D (open Delta). See Load Configurations (page 50) for more details.
Lgc Max Cyc	Max cycle time for Logic mode. This is set in mains periods.This is the equivalent to the modulation period and it is used to compute Network electrical quantities when there is no modulation shift. It is only available in Logic Mode.
Firing Mode	Firing Mode allows the firing mode to be selected as Burst Var, Burst Fix, or Logic, Phase Angle (PA) or Intelligent half cycle (IHC). See Firing Output Menu (page 162) for more details.
SP Op Access	Setpoint Operator Access: Allows the user setpoint access via the front panel, in operator configuration when enabled. To enable set to Yes. (The default setting is Yes).
Backlight Di.	Backlight Dimming: By default, the backlight on the EPack's display dims automatically to save power. Set this parameter to No if you want the backlight to always remain on. If set to Yes, the backlight dims 30 seconds after you last operate the buttons on the front panel.
Ana_in type	Select the Analog Input type as 0 to 10V, 1 to 5 V, 2 to 10V, 0 to 5V, 0 to 20mA,4 to 20mA.
Limit SP1	This is the setpoint for the first Limit loop. For example, it can be used to perform Irms threshold limit: "I" measurement from network block shall be wired to the LimitPV1 of the control block (or current limit enabled in QuickStart). Limit.SP1 setpoint is set to the threshold current value (e.g. 100 for a current limitation at 100A). With this configuration output is control by MainSP but if LimitPV1 reaches LimitSP1 the controller will switch to limit control. It is only available if limit feature is enabled.
SWIR Load Cooling	Time 0: No dedicated firing strategy is applied on SWIR load.
	1-max: A Safety ramp is applied at next firing if no power is applied on SWIR load for more than this amount of time in ms. It is only available when Heater Type is SWIR.
'Safety Ramp'	Displays the startup ramp duration, in supply voltage cycles (0 to 255), to be applied at startup. The ramp is either a phase angle ramp from zero to the requested target phase angle or, for Burst Firing, from 0 to 100%. 'Safety Ramp' is not applicable to Half cycle Mode if Heater Type is different from SWIR.
Soft Start	For Burst Firing only, this is the soft start duration, in supply voltage cycles, applying a phase angle ramp at the beginning of each ON period. See Firing Output Menu (page 162) for more details.

Soft Stop

•

In Burst Firing, the soft stop duration, in supply voltage cycles, applying a phase angle ramp at the end of each ON period. See Firing Output Menu (page 162) for more details.

WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.

/î

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

For transformer Load, select XFMR as Load Type (select Yes for Transfo. in quick code).

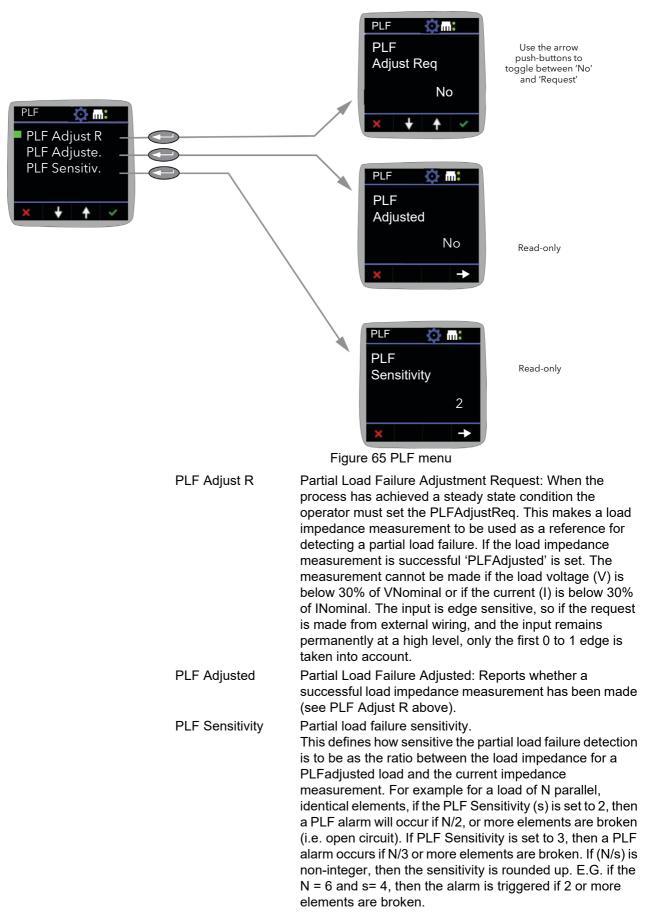
For transformer Load, in burst firing mode, without soft start, adjust Delayed Triggering (DelayedTrigger) to minimize inrush current.

Delay Triggering	Appears only if Mode is Burst, Soft Start is Off, and Load Type is TxFormer. Delayed Trigger specifies the triggering delay, in phase angle, when delivering power into a transformer load. Used to minimize inrush current, the value is configurable between 0 and 90 degrees, inclusive.
PLF Adjust R	Partial Load Failure Adjustment Request: When the process has achieved a steady state condition the operator must set the PLFAdjustReq. This makes a load impedance measurement to be used as a reference for detecting a partial load failure. If the load impedance measurement is successful 'PLFAdjusted' is set. The measurement cannot be made if the load voltage (V) is below 30% of VNominal or if the current (I) is below 30% of INominal. The input is edge sensitive, so if the request is made from external wiring, and the input remains permanently at a high level, only the first 0 to 1 edge is taken into account.
PLF Adjusted	Partial Load Failure Adjusted: A successful load imped- ance measurement has been made (see PLF Adjust R above).
PLF Sensitivity	Partial load failure sensitivity. This defines how sensitive the partial load failure detection is to be as the ratio between the load impedance for a PLFadjusted load and the current impedance measurement. For example for a load of N parallel, identical elements, if the PLF Sensitivity (s) is set to 2, then a PLF alarm will occur if N/2, or more elements are broken (i.e. open circuit). If PLF Sensitivity is set to 3, then a PLF alarm occurs if N/3 or more elements are broken. If (N/s) is non-integer, then the sensitivity is rounded up. E.G. if the N = 6 and s= 4, then the alarm is triggered if 2 or more elements are broken.

PLF menu

The PLF (Partial Load Failure) menu is only available in Engineer mode.

Note: The default Engineer access level code is 2.



Info menu

This display gives read only information about the unit.

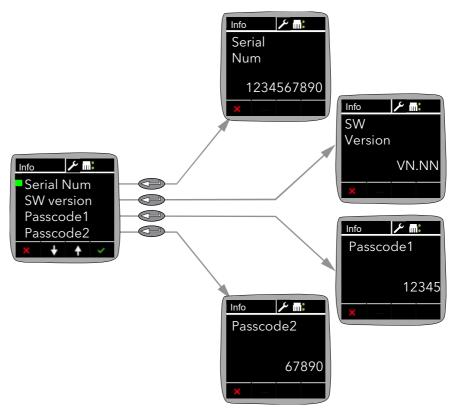


Figure 66 Info menu

Alarms menu

Allows the user to view Global acknowledgement enable status, and issues with calibration (if any). Any active alarms appear, and details can be found by highlighting the relevant alarm and using the Enter pushbutton.

Active alarms can be acknowledged, if applicable, by a further operation of the Enter button.

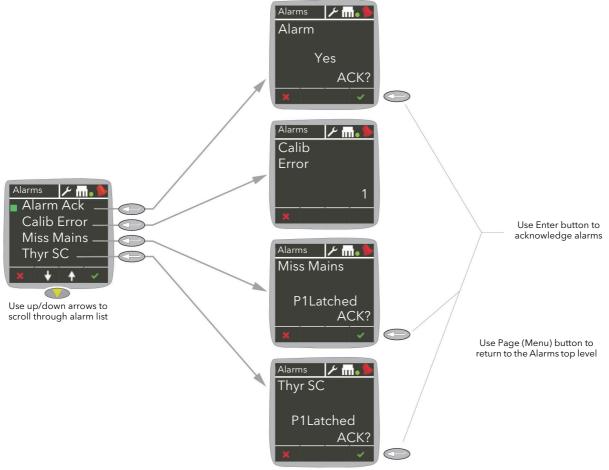


Figure 67 Alarms menu

Alm Disable menu

This menu allows the user to disable particular alarm types, so that they are no longer detected or acted upon. You can also do this using iTools.

By default all of the alarms are enabled.

To disable or re-enable an alarm, simply scroll through the list and select the alarm you want, then use the arrow keys to toggle its status between Disable and Enable as required.

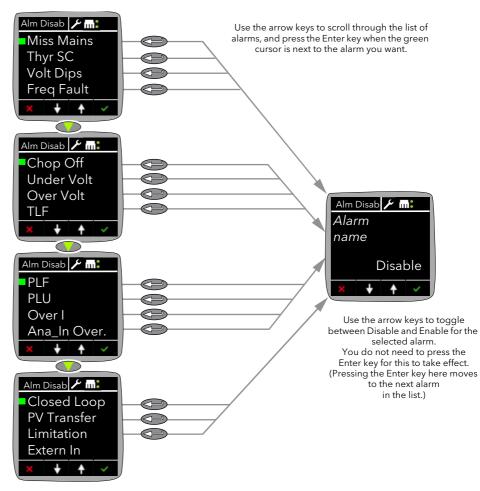


Figure 68 Alarm Disable menu

Alm Latch Menu

This menu allows the user to set latching or no latching to particular alarm types.

To select the latching type, simply scroll through the list and select the alarm you want, then use the arrow keys to toggle its status between Latch and NoLatch as required.

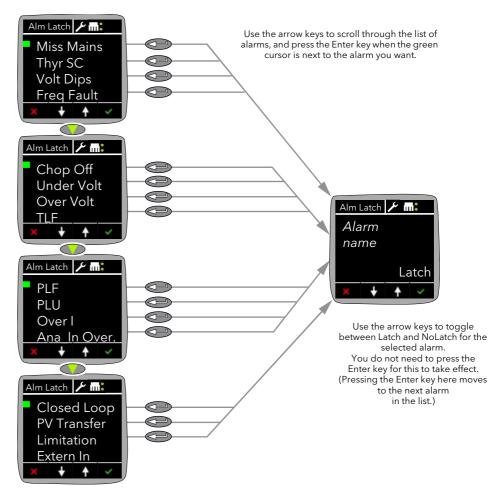


Figure 69 Alarm Latch Menu

Alm Stop menu

This menu allows the user to set which alarms will cause the EPack to stop firing. You can also do this using iTools.

By default, all of the system alarms are set to stop firing, but are customer configurable. Except for Missing Mains and Frequency Fault which are not user configurable.

To change whether an alarm causes the EPack to stop firing, simply scroll through the list and select the alarm you want, then use the arrow keys to toggle its status between Stop and NoStop as required.

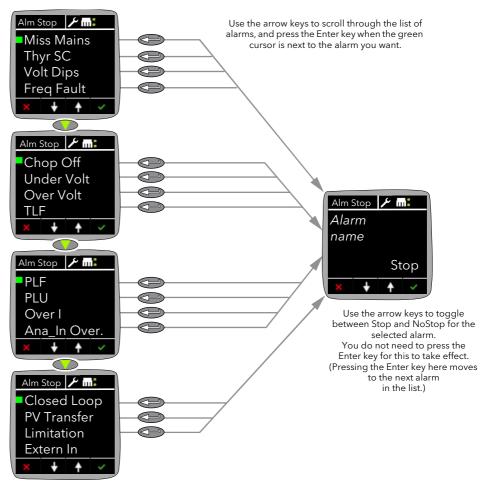


Figure 70 Alarm Stop menu

Alm Relay menu

This menu allows the user to select which alarms are to operate (de-energize) the EPack's relay. For each selected alarm, select 'Yes' or 'No'.

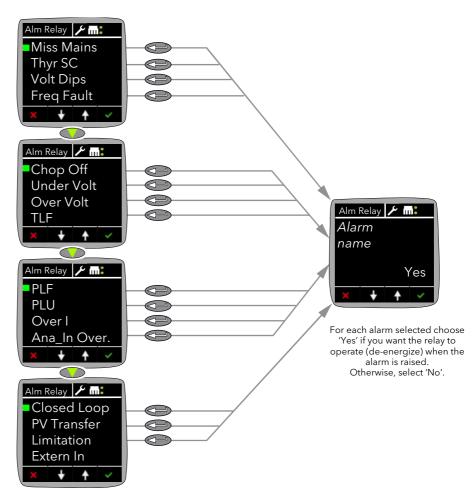


Figure 71 Alarm Relay menu

DI Stat menu

The DI Stat menu displays the status of the EPack's two digital inputs, DI1 and DI2.

'0' means a low level logic signal is being received at the input, '1' means a high level logic signal is being received at the input.



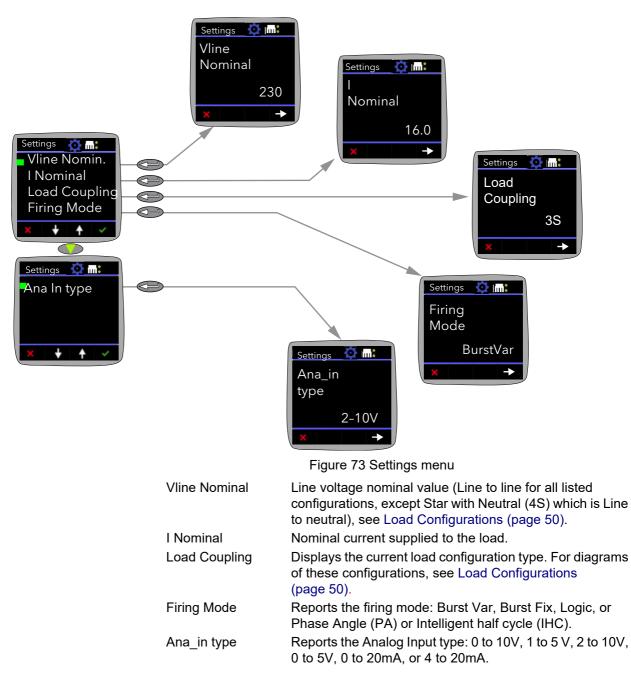
Figure 72 DI Stat menu

PLF Adjust menu

See "Adjust menu" on page 126.

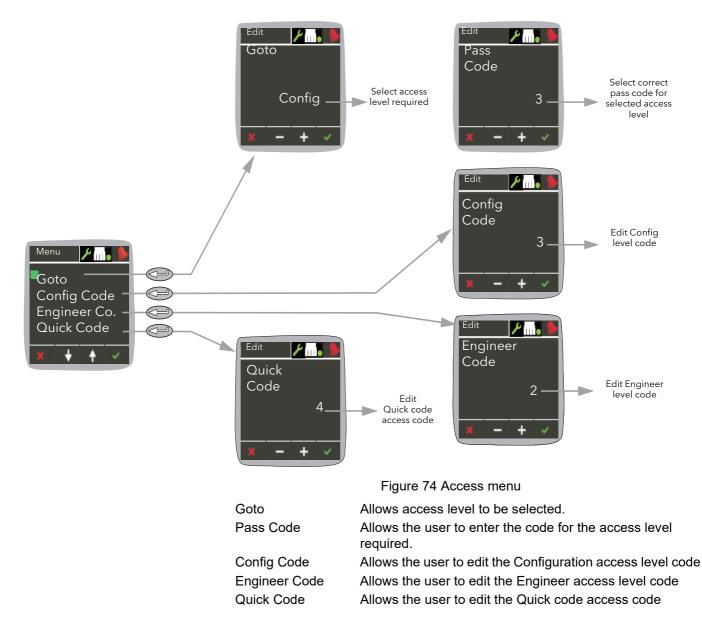
Settings menu

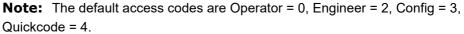
The Settings menu is only available in Engineer mode. This menu is read-only, and lets you view the values of the parameters described below.



Access menu

Allows access to the Operator, Engineer, Configuration, Quick Code menus and allows passwords to be set up.





Access to Menus

- 1. Open the Access menu item.
- 2. Open the Goto menu item and select the access level required.
- 3. Enter the access code for the level required. If this access code is correct the relevant menu appears.

Note: The above applies only when the user attempts to access a higher level than that current. If accessing a lower level, the user needs only to open the Goto item and select the required level. After doing this, the instrument will probably restart.

Configuration using iTools

Introduction

Note: This chapter contains descriptions of all the menus which can appear. If an option or a feature is not fitted and/or enabled, then it does not appear in the top level menu.

This chapter details how to connect using iTools and gives details of the features available from this instrument.

Overview

The configuration of the unit is divided into a number of separate areas as follows:

- "Access Menu" on page 142
- "Alarm Configuration" on page 144
- "Control Configuration" on page 148
- "Counter Configuration" on page 156
- "Energy Configuration" on page 158
- "Fault Detection Menu" on page 160
- "Firing Output Menu" on page 162
- "Input/Output (IO) Configuration" on page 166
- "Instrument Configuration Menu" on page 172
- "IP Monitor Configuration" on page 176
- "Lgc2 (Two Input Logic Operator) Menu" on page 177
- "Lgc8 (Eight-input Logic Operator) Configuration" on page 179
- "LIN16 Input Linearization" on page 182
- "Math2 Menu" on page 185
- "Modulator Configuration" on page 187
- "Network Configuration" on page 188
- "Qcode" on page 196
- "Setprov Configuration Menu" on page 198
- "Timer Configuration" on page 200
- "Totalizer Configuration" on page 202
- "User Value Configuration Menu" on page 203

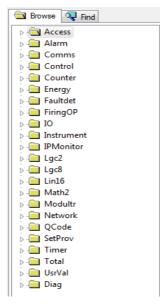


Figure 75 iTools tree

Note: Current rating, limitation, transfer control, power control, energy counter and the graphical wiring editor (GWE) are chargeable options. iTools secure can be used to upgrade units.

Access Menu

The Access menu allows the user to set the operating level (Operator, Engineer, Configuration or QuickStart) and define the access codes for these levels. It has to be also used to set a Comms Password used to protect Configuration data from being written via Comms. This password shall be provided each time config or QuickStart mode is to be entered from Comms. In addition, the Access menu allows the configuration of the optional 'OEM Security' feature.

'OEM security' helps to provide users, typically OEMs (original equipment manufacturers) the ability to protect their intellectual property by helping to prevent unauthorized access to configuration data.

An 'OEM security' access password can be configured to help prevent iTools from fully communicating with the instrument which helps to prevent specific parameters and their associated values from being copied or overwritten during iTools clone export/import.

In addition, when the OEM security feature is enabled, iTools has restricted access to Modbus addresses between 0x100 and 0x4744, graphical wiring.

Note: The OEM security feature is a chargeable option, either when ordering or via the purchase of a secure feature pass code.

← ▼ → ▼ □	1					Operate	Configurati	<u> </u>
Proj Nom	Description	Adresse		Connexion de		l obeigu	u (u)	
CommsPassword	To Set Comms Password	12576				Engine	or (1)	
🖉 Goto	Aller à	3050	Configuration (2) -					
Passcode	Demande de mot de passe	3051	0			Configu	iration (2) 👘	
EngineerPasscode	Engineer Code	3052	2					
ConfigurationPasso	ode Code de configuration	3053	3			QuickS	tart [3]	
QuickStartPasscod	e Code Quick Start	3054	4					
OEMEnable	Enable OEM security	198	Non (0) 💳					
OEMPassword	To Set OEM Password	12288	*********					N 2005 -
OEMPasswordEntr	To Enter OEM Password	12384	ининии					No (0) 🗄
							No (0)	
	tres (1 caché)	12304	12000-00-000-000	2			No (0) Yes (1)	

	Figure 76 iTools Access menu
Goto	Select access level
Passcode	Select relevant pass code for the access level required.
EngineerPasscode	Passcode for Engineer level access
ConfigurationPassco	ode
	Passcode for Configuration level access
QuickStartPasscode	Passcode for Quickcode menu
	Quickcode remains available from the EPack menu, when run successfully the default setting disables the OEM security feature.
OEMEntry	Password for OEM security access.
	Provided the user enters the correct password, the OEM security feature will load and display the remaining OEM security parameters (and menus on the instruments front panel). (The OEMEntry password entered is compared to the OEMPassword parameter value, when identical access is provided and the OEM security feature loads).
Note: If five incorrect ac	ccess codes are entered the OEMEntry menu will become
non-editable for 30 minute	9S.

OEMEnable	OEM security parameter used to switch OEM security feature On (enable) or Off (disable). This parameter is stored in non-volatile memory. The default value is Off (disable), after an initial Quickcode start.
OEMPassword	OEM security password parameter allows the user to edit the alphanumeric password. It shall be at least eight characters.
	This parameter is stored in non-volatile memory. If the OEMPassword parameter value is updated i.e. a new password entered the OEMEnable and OEMPassword parameters (and menus) disappear.
Clear memory	When available and set to 'yes', the device clears all configuration data (including the Comms Password), performs a cold-start and enters the Quickcode mode.

Alarm Configuration

🖩 epk000A8D3900FF-local.ID255-EPack PH - Parameter Explorer (Alarm)			
	 AlmSig AlmLat AlmAck AlmStop Alm -		ب ې-
Name Cutambr	Description	Address	Value Wired From
🖉 ExternIn	External Alarm Input	4200	<u>u</u>
Alarm.Main - 1 parameter			

	Figure 77 Alarm configuration
Main	'ExternIn' is the input of this block. When connected to digital input 2 (DI2) and DI2 connected to a fuse blown detection contact, this alarm is considered as a 'fuse blown' alarm.
AlarmDis	This allows the listed alarm to be enabled or disabled. 0 = Enable; 1 = Disable.
AlmDet	This parameter indicates whether the alarm has been detected and is currently active. 0 = Inactive; 1 = Active.
AlmSig	Signals that the alarm has occurred and is possibly latched by the Alarm Latch settings. If the user wishes to assign a alarm to, for example, a relay then it is the appropriate AlmSig parameter that should be wired. 0 = Not Latched; 1 = Latched.
AlmLat	The alarm can be configured as latching or non-latching, the latched state being shown in the Alarm Signal (AlmSig register. 0 = Non-Latching; 1 = Latching.
AlmAck	Allows the alarm to be acknowledged. When an alarm is acknowledged, its related signaling (AlmSig) parameter is cleared. If the alarm is still active (as shown by the detection (AlmDet) parameter) then the alarm cannot be acknowledged. The acknowledge parameters automatically clear after being written. 0 = Do not acknowledge; 1 = Acknowledge.
AlmStop	Allows the alarm to be configured such that it stops the related power channel firing. AlmStop is activated by the signaling parameters and thus may be latching. 0 = Do not stop; 1 = Stop.
AlmRelay	This allows the listed alarm to operate and de-energize the alarm relay when set to active. No (0) = Inactive; Yes (1) = Active. (When utilizing AlmRelay function ensure FaultDet/CustomAlarm parameter remains wired to

Communications Configuration

The communications menu allows the user to view, and in some cases, to edit communications parameters associated with the communications option.

Name	Description	ddress	Value Wired From	DCP (2)
Mame Hostname	Name of the device on the link-lo	3136		
SRVname	MBUS name		3US Epack[000000000000]	
IPMode	IP configuration mode (static - dh	3109		
IP	Current IP of the instrument	3114	67	-
cSubNetMask	Current SubNet mask IP	3115		-
cDefault Gateway	Current Default Gateway IP addre	3116	C REPORTS	
PrefMaster	Preferred Master IP address	3105		
Address	Comms Address	3101	255	-
IP_address	IP address.	3102		
Subnet Mask	IP address of the subnet mask	3103		9 Off (0)
Default_Gateway	IP address of the default gateway	3104		2 Off (0)
MAC12	MAC address 1	3106	0	1 On(1)
MAC34	MAC address 2	3107	0	
MAC56	MAC address 3	3108	0	ModbusTCP (0)
Timout	Comms Timeout in ms.	3110	5000	ModbusTCP and EIP
Fallback1	Fallback1	3112	1	ModbusTCP and PN
Fallback2	Fallback2	3113	0	Last (30)
EnTimeout	Timeout Enable	3117	Off (0) *	
Protocol	Comms Protocol	3100	ModbusTCP and EIP (1) -	
lOgateway	IO Gateway Access	4744	???????	
LinkSpeed	Speed of the ethernet link.	3149	Auto Nego (0) 🔻 💶	1 Auto Nego
EIP_Status	Ethernet IP stack status	3153	Not Started (0) 👻	Auto Nego (0)
EIP_TO_Status	Ethernet IP Target to Originator st	3160	DataExchange (0) 🔻	100 Mb (1) 100 Mb H/d (2)
EIP_OT_Status	Ethernet IP Originator to Target s	3161	DataExchange (0) *	10 Mb (3)
EIP_NetworkStatus	Ethernet IP network status	3158		10 Mb H/d (4)
EIP_ModuleStatus	Ethernet IP module status	3159		
cLink1Speed	Current speed of the ethernet link	3154		
cLink1Mode	Current mode of the ethernet link (3155		
cLink2Speed	Current speed of the ethernet link	3156		
cLink2Mode	Current mode of the ethernet link (3157		
TCPTimeout	TCP Comms Timeout in ms.	3150		
TCP_Open	TCP Number Open Connection	3152		
PN_DevName	Profinet Device Name	3163		
PN_Status	Profinet stack status	3229		
PN_AlarmsEn	PROFINET Alarms	3230	On (1) 🔻	

Figure 78 iTools comms page

—
The name of the device on the link-local network.
For convenience, the device can declare itself on the pseudo-domain local. If the hostname of the device is changed, it must be ensured that the name is unique on
the network. In this is not the case, the instrument will transparently try to find another unique name automatically.
The default value is related to the MAC address of the device and thus should already be unique.
MBUS name. The name of the device, as shown by iTools
The IP configuration mode of the instrument.
0: Static.The IP parameters are taken from the parameter IPaddr, SubNetMark and NetGateway.
1: DHCP.The IP address of the instrument is automatically assigned by an external DHCP server. If the instrument does not acquire an IP address, the auto IP mechanism assigns an IP to the instrument in the range 169.254.xxx.xxx with subnet mask: 255.255.0.0.
2: DCP.The Discovery and Basic Configuration Protocol DCP is a protocol definition within the PROFINET context. It is a Data Link Layer based protocol to configure station names and IP addresses.
This is the current IP address of the device which may be different from the configured IP address.
The current subnet mask associated with 'IP' above.

EPack

		EPack
Default Gateway Pref Master	The current default gate The IP address of the pr	way associated with 'IP' above. eferred host.
Address	a particular instrument. E must be set to a unique range depending upon th supports only Modbus/To the network is carried ou	ents this address is used to specify Each instrument on a network address, the available address ne network protocol. As EPack CP protocol, and discrimination on it using the IP addresses of the the Modbus addresses of the
IP address	The configured IP addre	ss of the device
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask associ	ated with 'IP address' above.
Default Gateway	The default gateway ass	ociated with 'IP address' above.
MAC12	First two Bytes of the MA	AC Address 11-22-33-44-55-66
MAC34	Second two Bytes of the 33-44 -55-66	MAC Address 11-22-
MAC56	Third two Bytes of the M	AC Address 11-22-33-44- 55-66
Timeout		ms. If no usercomms request becified in this parameter, the nge.
Fallback1	Set to 1 when a timeout communications are ope	
Fallback2	Inverse value of the Fall	back1 parameter.
EnTimeout	monitored. The outputs I adjusted accordingly.	out of the comms requests will be Fallback1 and Fallback2 will be
	0 =Off. 1= On	
Protocol	over Ethernet comms.	stocol to access the instrument
	0 = ModbusTCP	
	1 = ModbusTCP and EIF 2 = ModbusTCP and PR	OFINET
IO gateway	IP address of IO gatewa	-
Link Speed	half duplex, 10 MB or 10	
EIP_Status	Displays the Ethernet/IP following values:	stack status, using one of the
star		2: Ethernet/IP stack Standby
1: E	thernet/IP stack ready	3: Ethernet/IP stack Running
EIP_TO_Status	Displays the Ethernet/IP one of the following valu	Target to Originator status, using es:
0: D	ata Correctly Exchanged	7: Module In Stop
	onnection In progress	8: Encapsulation Error
2: C	onnection Timeout	9: TCP Connection Error
3: C	onnection Timeout	10: No resources to handle connection
	nknown MAC Address	11: Bad Format
	onsumption Timeout	12: Idle mode
	onnection Closed by vard Close	13: Unknown Status

EIP_OT_Status	Displays the Ethernet/IP indicated by one of the fo	Originator to Target status, ollowing values:
1: C 2: C	ata Correctly Exchanged onnection In progress onnection Timeout onnection Timeout	7: Module In Stop 8: Encapsulation Error 9: TCP Connection Error 10: No resources to handle connection
5: C 6: C	nknown MAC Address onsumption Timeout onnection Closed by vard Close	11: Bad Format 12: Idle mode 13: Unknown Status
EIP_Status	Displays the status of the by one of the following va	e Ethernet/IP network, indicated alues:
1: N	o Power or No IP o connection Enabled Unit On-line	3: Time Out on Connection One or more connection Timeout
(I N 2: C U c	P address configured) but o connection enabled onnection established nit is On-line (IP address onfigured) and connection nabled	4: Critical error Unit is in Critical error (like duplicate address)
EIP_ModuleStatus	Displays the status of the one of the following value	Ethernet/IP module, indicated by es:
1: U U S 2: C R C	o power on the device nit not configured nit not configured or canner in Idle mode ontrolled by a scanner in un state ontrolled by a scanner in un state	 3: Recoverable Fault An incorrect or inconsistent configuration would be considered a minor fault 4: Major Fault Major fault (Exception state, critical error etc.)
EIP_cLink1Speed	Displays the current spee	ed of the Ethernet link on Port1.
EIP_clink1Mode EIP_cLink2Speed EIP_clink2Mode TCPTimeout	Displays the current mod Displays the current spec Displays the current mod Timeout used to close an	le of the Ethernet link on Port1. ed of the Ethernet link on Port2. le of the Ethernet link on Port2. open TCP connection, which are r that originally opened it - adjust
TCP_Open PN_DevName PN_Status	TCP Open is the quantity Displays the Profinet dev This parameter gives the 0 : Not started.	/ of live, open connections.
PNAlarmsEn	1 : Ready. 2 : Running. Enables or disables the F Alarms). See "Alarm Not	PROFINET Alarms (EPack's ification" on page 115.

Control Configuration

The control menu provides the control algorithm to perform power control and transfer, threshold limiting and phase angle reduction (in the case of burst firing). Figure 79, below, gives an overview of the menu, which is described in the following sections:

- Setup
- Main
- Limit
- Diag (Diagnostics)
- AlmDis (Alarm disable)
- AlmDet (Alarm detection)
- AlmSig (Alarm Signaling)
- AlmLat (Alarm latching)
- AlmAck (Alarm Acknowledgement)
- AlmStop (Stop firing on alarm)
- AlmRelay, Control Alarm Relay

+	$\bullet \rightarrow \bullet$									-
Se	etup Main	Limit Diag	Alm	nDis .	AlmDet	AlmSig	AlmLat	AlmAck	AlmStop	AlmRelay
	Name	Description		_v ddres	s		Value	Wired Fro	m	
Ø	Standby	Put controller into	stand	10	56	1	Vo (0) ▼			
ø	NominalPV	Nominal PV of this	s pha:	10	57	É	52900.00			
Ø	EnLimit	Enable Threshold	l Limit	10	58	1	No (0) 💌			
Ø	TransferEn	Enable Transfer (Propo	10	59	1	No (0) 💌			
Ø	FFType	Defines the type of	of Fee	10	60		Off (0) 💌			
	FFGain	Feedforward gair		10	61		1.00			
	FFOffset	Feedforward offse	et	10	52		0.00			
Ø	BleedScale	Bleed Back Scale	ar	10	53		10.00			

Figure 79 Control menu overview

Control setup menu

This contains parameters for setting the type of control to be performed.



Figure 80 Control setup page

mrol.Setup - 8 parameters

S		
	Standby	If Yes (1), the controller enters Standby mode and zero % power is demanded. When removed from Standby (0) the unit returns to operating mode in a controlled manner.
	Nominal PV	Normally the nominal value for each control type. For example, for feedback mode = V^2 , Vsq should be wired to the Main PV, and Nominal PV set to the nominal value expected for V^2 (usually VLoadNominal ²).
	En Limit	This is an software feature available at order stage (CL on field 3 of the product code) or upgradable afterward. If it is available it is used to enable/disable threshold limit (By default the current limit function is enabled).
		limiting function is not available with the firing mode; lalf Cycle (IHC).
	Transfer En	Select Transfer Enable (Proportional limit) as 'Yes' (enabled) or 'No' (not enabled).
	FF Type	Feedforward Type.
		Off (0). Feedforward is disabled
		Trim (1). Feedforward value is the dominant element of the output. Trimmed by the control loop based on the Main PV and setpoint.
		FFOnly (2). The feedforward value is the output from the controller. Open loop control may be configured by this means.
	FF Gain	The entered gain value is applied to the Feedforward input.
	FF Offset	The entered value is applied to the Feedforward input after the Gain value has been applied to it.
	Bleed Scale	Internal parameter for use by service personnel.

Control Main menu

This menu contains all the parameters associated with the Main control loop.

+	$ \cdot \rangle \rightarrow \cdot $	Parameter Explorer (Control.Main)			
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From
	PV	The main PV of the controller	1064	0.00	Network.Meas.Vsq
1	SP	Main SP to control at	1065	0.00	SetProv.WorkingSP
	TransferPV	The transfer (proportional limit) PV	1066	0.00	
	TransferSpa	The transfer (proportional limit) span	1067	0.00	
ø	ТΙ	Integral time of the main loop	1068	3.20	
•		III			•

Figure 81 Control 'Main' menu

PV	Displays the main Controller Process Variable (PV). Wired to the measurement which it is to be controlled. For example, to perform V^2 control. Vsq should be wired to this (PV) parameter and Nominal PV configured appropriately.
SP	The Setpoint to control at, as a percentage of Nominal PV (the upper range of the loop in engineering units). For example, if Vsq = 193600, and SP is set to 20%, the controller attempts to regulate at 193600 x 20/100 = 38720 .
Trans PV	Transfer PV. This is the PV measurement for transfer. For example, if a V2 to I2 transfer is required, the Vsq should be wired to MainPV and Isq to TransferPV. Appears only if Trans Enable (Control setup menu) is set to 'Yes'.
Trans SP	The span of operation for transfer. Appears only if Trans Enable (Control setup menu) is set to 'Yes'.
TI	Allows the user to define an integral time for the main PI control loop.

Control limit configuration

$\bullet \bullet \bullet $			
Setup Main	Limit Diag AlmDis AlmD	et AlmSig Al	mLat AlmAck AlmStop
Name	Description	Address	Value
🖉 PV1	Threshold Limit PV1	1069	0.00
🖉 PV2	Threshold Limit PV2	1070	0.00
🖉 PV3	Threshold Limit PV3	1071	0.00
🖉 SP1	Threshold limit setpoint 1	1072	0.00
🖉 SP2	Threshold limit setpoint 2	1073	0.00
🖉 SP3	Threshold limit setpoint 3	1074	0.00
🖉 TI	Integral time of the limit loop	1075	1.00

This area configures parameters relating to the limit control loop.

Figure 82	Control	limit menu
-----------	---------	------------

Parameters

PV1 to PV3	Process value for limit loops 1 to 3 respectively. This is the value to perform threshold limit control. 'Limit Enable' must be set to 'Yes' in the Setup menu (Control setup menu).
SP1 to SP3	The Threshold Setpoint for limit loops 1 to 3 respectively.
TI	The integration time for the limit PI control loop. The default value is firing mode dependent.

Example:

If I² threshold limiting is required, Isq is wired to PV1, and the required threshold value is entered at SP1. In phase angle configuration, the phase angle is reduced to achieve the limit setpoint; in burst firing, the unit continues to fire in bursts, but these bursts are of phase angle in order to achieve the limit setpoint. The modulation continues to attempt to reach the main setpoint.

Also known as phase angle reduction burst firing.

Control diagnostic menu

Name	Description	Address	Value	MainPV (0 MainPV (0)
Status	Status of the controller	1076	MainPV (0) 🔹	Transfr (1)
Output	Output of the controller	1077	0.00	Limit1 (4)
PAOP	Phase angle output for PA re	1078	100.00	Limit2 (5) Limit3 (6)

Figure 83 iTools diagnostic menu

Parameters

Status	Indica	ates the current operating state of the controller:
	Main PV	The control strategy is using Main PV as the control input
	Transfer	The transfer input is being used as the input to the control strategy.
	Limit1(2)(3)	Control limiting is currently active using limit PV1(2)(3) and limit SP 1(2)(3).
Output		urrent output demand in percent. Normally wired to lator.In or FiringOP.In
PAOP	paran delive	es only to Burst Firing control modes. If this neter is wired to Firing.limitIn, the power module will er bursts of phase angle firing depending both on the Setpoint and on the Limit Setpoint.

Control Alarm disable menu

Allows each alarm of the control block to be disabled, individually.

III EPack.192-1	68-111-10-502-ID255-E	Pack - P	arameter Explorer (_ 🗆 🗙
$\leftarrow \cdot \rightarrow \cdot \mid \mathbf{E}$				-jaj
Name	Description	Address	Value	
🖉 ClosedLoop	Process alarm: Closed loop b	1079	Enable (0) 💌	
🖉 PVTransfer	Indication alarm: PV transfer	1080	Enable (0) 💌	
🖉 Limitation	Indication alarm: Limitation	1081	Enable (0) 💌	
Control.AlmDis	- 3 parameters			

Figure 84 Alarm disable page

Parameters

Closed Loop
PV Transfer
Limitation

Select Enable (0) or Disable (1) for loop break alarm. As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer active' alarm. As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

Control Alarm Detection Parameters

Indicates whether each alarm has been detected and whether or not it is currently active.

Name	Description	Address	Value
ClosedLoop	 Process alarm detection statu 	1082	Inactive (0) 💌
PVT ransfer	Indication alarm detection st	1083	Inactive (0) 💌
Limitation	 Indication alarm detection sta 	1084	Inactive (0) 💌

Figure 85 Control Alarm detection page

Parameters

Closed Loop	Displays whether or not the closed loop alarm is currently active.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

Control Alarm signaling parameters

Signals that an alarm has occurred and has been latched (if so configured in 'Alarm Latch' (page 154). If it is required that an alarm is to be assigned to a relay (for example), then the appropriate alarm signaling parameter should be used.

Name	Description	Address	Value	_
ClosedLoop	Process alarm signalling statu	1085	NotLatched (0) 💌	
PVT ransfer	Indication alarm signalling sta	1086	NotLatched (0) 💌	
Limitation	Indication alarm signalling sta	1087	NotLatched (0) 💌	

Figure 86 Control Alarm Signaling page

Closed Loop	Indicates whether the closed loop break alarm is currently active.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

Allows each alarm to be configured as latching or not latching.

Name	Description	Address	Value
ClosedLoop		1088	NoLatch (0) 💌
PVTransfer	Indication alarm latch: PV tra	1089	NoLatch (0) -
🖉 Limitation	Indication alarm latch: Limitat	1090	NoLatch (0) 💌

Figure 87 Control Alarm latching page

Parameters

Closed Loop	Set the latching status of the alarm.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

Control Alarm Acknowledgement parameters

This menu allows individual alarms to be acknowledged. On acknowledgement, the related signaling parameter is cleared. The Acknowledge parameters automatically clear after being written.

If the alarm is still active (as shown by the Alarm Detection display) it cannot be acknowledged.

⊞ ←	EPack.192-1 - → - 🗈	68-111-10-502-ID255-F	Pack - P	Parameter Explorer	
	Name	Description	Address	Value]
	ClosedLoop	Process alarm ack: Closed lo		NoAck (0) 💌	
	PVTransfer	Indication alarm ack: PV tran	1092	NoAck (0) 💌	
	Limitation	Indication alarm ack: Limitation	1093	NaAck (0) 💌	
Co	ontrol.AlmAck	- 3 parameters			

Figure 88 Control Alarm Acknowledge page

Closed Loop	Displays whether the closed loop alarm has been acknowledged or not.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

Control Alarm Stop parameters

Allows individual channels to be configured such that it will stop the associated power channel from firing whilst the alarm is active. This feature is activated by the signaling parameters, so the alarm stop may be latching.

	Name	Description	Address	Value
2	ClosedLoop	Process alarm stop: Closed Ic	1094	NoStop (0) 💌
	PVTransfer	Indication alarm stop: PV trar	1095	NoStop (0) 💌
	Limitation	Indication alarm stop: Limitati	1096	NoStop (0) 💌

Figure 89 iTools Control Alarm Stop page

Parameters

Closed Loop	Shows whether the closed loop alarm has been configured to disable firing or not.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

AlmRelay, Control Alarm Relay

Allows each individual alarm to be configured, so the alarm relay is de-energized (or not), whilst the alarm is active.

Note: When utilizing AlmRelay function ensure FaultDet/CustomAlarm parameter remains wired to IO.Relay/PV.

_						
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From	
Ø	ClosedLoop	Process alarm relay request register: Closed loop break	1097	No (0) 🔻		
Ø	PVTransfer	Indication alarm relay request register: PV transfer	1098	No (0) 🔻		
Ø	Limitation	Indication alarm relay request register: Limitation	1099	No (0) 💌		1

Figure 90 iTools Control Alarm Relay page

Closed Loop	Shows whether the closed loop alarm has been configured to de-energize alarm relay firing, or not.
PV Transfer	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Transfer Active' alarm.
Limitation	As for Closed Loop, but for the 'Control limit active' alarm.

The counter output is a 32-bit integer the value of which is recalculated every sample period. When a clock state change from 0 (false) to 1 (true) is detected, the counter value is incremented if the count direction is 'up' or decremented if the direction is 'down'.

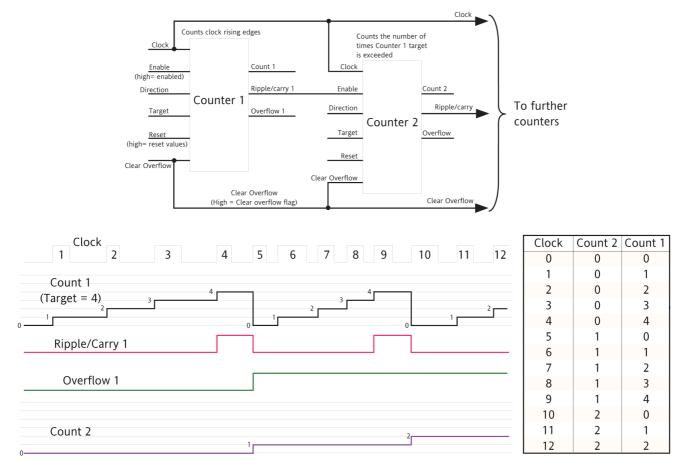
At reset, the counter value is set to 0 for count up counters or to the 'Target' value for count down counters.

← 1	2 3	4				
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From	
∕	Enable	Enable the Counter	2570	No (0) 🔻		
Ì	Direction	Direction of Count	2571	Up (0) 🔻		
	RippleCarry	Ripple Carry Enable Output	2572	Off (0) 🔻		
	OverFlow	Overflow Flag	2573	No (0) 👻		
Ì	Clock	Clock Input	2574	0		
	Target	Counter Target	2575	9999		
	Count	Count Value	2576	0		
Ì	Reset	Counter Reset	2577	No (0) 🔻		
1	ClearOverflow	Clear OverFlow Flag	2578	No (0) 🔻		
				(0)		

Figure 91 iTools Counter page

Enable	The counter responds to clock transitions when enabled; the count is frozen when disabled.
Direction	Select up or down as the direction of count. Up counters start at (and are reset to) zero; down counters start from (and are reset to) the Target value (below).
Ripple Carry	The Ripple carry output of one counter can act as the enabling input for the next counter in a cascade. Ripple carry is set 'true' when the counter is enabled and its value is either zero (for count down timers) or equal to the Target value (count up counters).
Overflow	Overflow becomes 'true' when the value of the counter is either zero (for count down timers) or equal to the Target value (count up counters).
Clock	The counter increments or decrements on a positive going edge (0 to 1; False to true).
Target	Up counters: Start at zero and count towards the Target value. When this value is reached, Overflow and Ripple-carry are set true (value = 1).
	Down counters: Start at the Target value and count towards zero. When zero is reached, Overflow and Ripple-carry are set true (value = 1).
Count	The current value of the counter. This is a 32-bit integer which accumulates clock transitions. Minimum value is zero.
Reset	Resets up-counters to zero or down-counters to the Target value. Reset also sets Overflow to False (i.e. Overflow = 0)
Clear Overflow	Sets Overflow to False (i.e. Overflow = 0)

Cascading Counters



As implied above, it is possible to 'wire' counters in cascade mode. Details for an 'up' counter are shown in Figure 92. Down counter configuration is similar.

Figure 92 Cascading up counters

Note: Counter 2 above counts the number of times that Counter 1 target is exceeded. By permanently enabling counter 2, and wiring counter 1 'Ripple Carry' output to counter 2 'Clock' input (replacing the connection to the clock pulse stream), counter 2 will indicate the number of times counter 1 target is reached, rather than exceeded.

Provides a number of energy counters to totalize consumed energy. The power consumed can be displayed in one of a number of units, ranging from Wh to GWh.

			-	Mh (0)	
Name Descript UsrEnergyUnit Unit of ti Input Input Input Set the Reset Set the ti Hold Hold Hold Hold the Energy User res Autosca	he energy	Address 4154 4152 4153 4153 4151 4150 4156	Value Wired From 0.00 No (0) * No (0) * 0.00 Yes (1) * 0.00	10 Wh (1) 100 Wh (2) KWh (3) 10 KWh (4) 100 kWh (5) MWh (6) 10 MWh (7)	

Figure 93 Energy configuration page

UsrEnergyUnit	Init Allows a scaling units value to be entered for the energy display. Selectable as '1Wh', '10Wh', '100Wh', '1kWh', '10kWh', '100kWh', '10MWh', '100MWh' or '1GWh'.				
Input	Shows the instantaneous power input f source. Normally wired to the Meas.P				
Reset1 = Energy counter output goes to zero and imnstarts accumulating.					
	0 = Energy counter not reset.				
Hold	 1 = Hold output value. This freezes the output value block at the current value. The input continues to totalized, so when the Hold input returns to 0, the value is instantaneously updated to the new curren 0 = output value is not held, and represents the c accumulated Energy value. 				
Energy	Shows the current value for the selected	ed Energy Count			
Energy	block.				
Autoscale	AutoscaleNo = Use UsrUnit setting.Yes = Autoscale power value display (Table 4).				
	Table 4: Scaler values				
Γ	Power range (Watt-hours)	Scaler value			
_	0 to 65535	1			
	65,535 to 65,535,000	1k			
	65,535,000 to 655,350,000	10k			
	655,350,000 to 6,553,500,000	100k			
	6,553,500,000 to 65,535,000,000	1M			
	65,535,000,000 to 655,350,000,000	10M			
	03,333,000,000 to 033,330,000,000				
	655,350,000,000 to 6,553,500,000,000	100M			

Resolution

The resolution of the stored energy value varies according to the totalized value, as shown in Table 5. For example, for stored values between 33,554,432 watt-hours and 67,108,863 watt-hours, the value increases in 4 watt-hour increments.

Power range (Watt-hours)	Resolution (Wh)	Power range (Watt-hours)	Resolution (Wh)
0 to 16,777,215	1	17,179,869,184 to 34,359,738,367	2048
16,777,216 to 33,554,431	2	34,359,738,368 to 68,719,476,736	4096
33,554,432 to 67,108,863	4	68,719,476,736 to 137,438,953,471	8192
67,108,864 to 134,217,727	8	137,438,953,472 to 274,877,906,943	16384
134,217,728 to 268,435,455	16	274,877,906,944 to 549,755,813,887	32768
268,435,456 to 536,870,911	32	549,755,813,888 to 1,099,511,627,776	65536
536,870,912 to 1,073,741,823	64	1,099,511,627,776 to 2,199,023,255,551	131072
1,073,741,824 to 2,147,483,647	128	2,199,023,255,552 to 4,398,046,511,103	262144
2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295	256	4,398,046,511,104 to 8,796,093,022,207	524288
4,294,967,296 to 8,589,934,591	512	8,796,093,022,208 to 17,592,186,044,415	1048576
8,589,934,592 to 17,179,869,183	1024		

Table 5: Energy counter resolution

This manages Alarm logging and provides an interface for the General Alarm Acknowledgement.

Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From			
GeneralAck	Global Acknowledge	3000	No (0) 💌	10.Digital.2.PV			
AlarmAck	Global Acknowledge through	3015	No (0) 💌				
AnyAlarm	Indicates one or more alarm i	3001	Active (1) 💌				
NetProcAl	Any Network Process Alarm	3002	Inactive (0) 💌				
AnySysAlm	Indication of any system alarr	3013	Active (1) 💌				
CustomAlarm	Indication of a custom alarm	3014	Active (1) 💌				
GlobalDis	Global Disable all alarms	3003	No (0) 💌				
AlmStatus	Global Alarm Status Word	3004	1				
StratStatus	Strategy Status Word	3005	259				
AlarmStatus1	Alarm Status Word 1	3006	1				
AlarmStatus2	Alarm Status Word 2	3007	0				
GlobalStatus0	Global Status Word 0	3008	0				
GlobalStatus1	Global Status Word 1	3009	0				
GlobalStatus2	Global Status Word 2	3010	512				
GlobalStatus3	Global Status Word 3	3011	0				
GlobalStatus4	Global Status Word 4	3012	3145729				

Figure 94 Fault detection menu page

General Ack	Performs a global acknowledgement of alarms. Latched alarms are cleared if their trigger sources are no longer in an alarm state. Wired by default from Digital input 2.
AlarmAck	Enables global alarm acknowledgement from front fascia.
Any Alarm	'Active' indicates that there is one or more System, Process or 'Chop Off' alarm active. If the relevant alarms are enabled, System alarms and Chop Off alarms always cause the power module to stop firing. Process alarms can also be configured to prevent firing in 'Alarm stop'.
NetProcAl	Indicates that a process alarm has occurred in the power network.
AnySysAlm	Indicates that a systems alarm is active. By default, this is wired to Custom Alarm, see below.
Custom Alarm	Indicates that an alarm using rules defined by user, is active. By default, this is wired to IO Relay.PV. (See AlmRelay tab in corresponding function block)
Global Disable	Allows the user to disable/enable all alarms.

StratStatus

A coded status word giving strategy information as shown in Table 6.

Bit	Value	Description
0	1	Not firing
1	2	Not synchronising
2	4	Reserved
3	8	Reserved
4	16	Reserved
5	32	Reserved
6	64	Reserved
7	128	Strategy in standby mode
8	256	Strategy in Telemetry mode
9	512	Reserved
10	1024	Reserved
11	2048	Reserved
12	4096	Reserved
13	8192	Reserved
14	16384	Reserved
15	32768	Reserved

Table 6: Strategy status

Alarm Status 1(2) Two 16-bit words containing alarm status information as shown in Table 7.

Table 7: Alarm status word 1

Alarm status word 2

Bit	Value	Description	Bit	Value	Description
0	1	Missing mains	0	1	Closed loop
1	2	Thyristor short circuit	1	2	Transfer active
2	4	Over temp*	2	4	Limit active
3	8	Dips	3	8	Reserved
4	16	Frequency out of range	4	16	Reserved
5	32	Total Load Failure	5	32	Reserved
6	64	Chop off	6	64	Reserved
7	128	Partial load failure	7	128	Reserved
8	256	Partial load unbalance	8	256	Any bit in Global Status 0
9	512	Over voltage	9	512	Any bit in Global Status 1
10	1024	Under voltage	10	1024	Any bit in Global Status 2
11	2048	Pre temp*	11	2048	Any bit in Global Status 3
12	4096	Over current	12	4096	Reserved
13	8192	Reserved	13	8192	Reserved
14	16384	Analogue input over C	14	16384	Reserved
15	32768	External input	15	32768	Reserved
1			1	l	

Note: * These alarms not applicable at this release but are reserved for future development.

Firing Output Menu

This forms the link between the control strategy and the physical load. This block also supplies Phase-Angle Ramp (Soft start) and Safety Ramp.

← • → • @ @				— [2]	No Mode (3)
Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From	
Mode	Firing Mode indication.	1433	Mode_Burst (1) *		2 Resistive (0)
LoadType	Load type configuration.	1432	Resistive (0) -		Resistive (0)
LoadCoupling	Load coupling configuration	1442	35 (0) 🝷	~	XEMB (1)
ULM	Unbalanced Load Managem	1444	On (1) 🝷		
SWIRLoadCoolingTime	SWIR load cooling time	1445	1s …		
SWIRLoadCoolingThreshold	SWIR Load Cooling threshold	1446	10		_
SafetyRamp	Safety ramp duration	1434	25,00 -		
SoftStart	Soft start duration	1435	Off (0) 🕶		35 (0
SoftStop	Soft stop duration	1436	Off (0) 🕶		
DelayedTrigger	Delayed Triggering for transfe	1437	60		3S (0)
🖉 Enable	Enable of the firing output blo	1441	0	IO.Digital.1.PV	3D (1)
🖉 In	Input of the firing output bloc	1438	0,00	Modultr.Out	
🖉 PaLimitIn	Phase angle input for PA red	1439	100,00	Control.Diag.PAOP	
SafetyRampStatus	Status of the safety ramp	1440	Ramping (0) *		

Figure 95 iTools configuration firing output page

Mode

Displays the current firing mode as Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC), Burst firing, Phase angle firing or No Mode. Configured in the 'Modulator', menu described below.

	WARNING	
--	---------	--

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

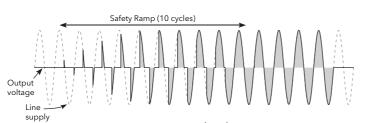
For transformer Load, select XFMR as Load Type (select Yes for Transfo. in QuickCode). For transformer Load, in burst firing mode, without soft start, adjust Delayed Triggering (DelayedTrigger) to minimize inrush current.

,,	
Load Type	Allows the load type to be selected as 'Resistive' or 'Transformer'. For Load type = Resistive, the load must be connected directly to the power module and only resistive loads may be so connected. For Load Type = Transformer, the load is connected to the power module via a transformer, and may be resistive or reactive.
SWIR Load Cooling	Time:
	Appears only if Heater Type is SWIR.
	0: No dedicated firing strategy is applied on SWIR load
	1-max: A Safety ramp is applied at next firing if no power is applied on SWIR load for more than this amount of time in ms if Heater Type different from SWIR.
SWIR Load Cooling	Threshold:
	Appears only if Heater Type is SWIR and SWIR Load Cooling Time is different from zero.
	This is the Firing angle in percent below which SWIR load is considered unpowered (cold).
	This threshold can be adjust between 0 and 25%.
Load Coupling	For 3 phase systems, this allows the user to select one of the following wiring configurations:
	3 Star (3S), 3 Delta (3D), 4 Star (4S) or 6 Delta (6D)
Unbalanced Load M	anagement (ULM)
	Unbalanced Load Management automatically adjusts the thyristor firing to avoid any synchronization shift caused by unbalanced load.

Note: Only available wh	nen Load coupling is 3S or 3D and Load type is Resistive.
'Safety Ramp'	Displays the startup ramp duration, in supply voltage cycles (0 to 255), to be applied at startup. The ramp is either a phase angle ramp from zero to the requested target phase angle or, for Burst Firing, ranges from 0 to 100%, see Figure 96. Safety Ramp is not applicable to Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC) Mode if Heater Type is different from SWIR.
Soft Start	For Burst Firing only, this is the soft start duration, in supply voltage cycles, applying a phase angle ramp at the beginning of each on period (Figure 97).
Soft Stop	In Burst Firing, the soft stop duration, in supply voltage cycles, applying a phase angle ramp at the end of each on period.
Delayed Trigger	Appears only if Mode = Burst, Soft Start = Off, and Load Type = TxFormer. Delayed Trigger specifies the triggering delay, in phase angle, when delivering power into a transformer load. Used to minimize inrush current. the value is configurable between 0 and 90 degrees inclusive (Figure 98).
Enable	Enables/disables firing. Must be wired to a non-zero value to enable firing (typically a digital input).
In	Displays the input power demand value that the power module is to deliver.
PA Limit	Phase angle limit. This is a phase angle reduction factor used in Burst Firing. If lower than 100% the power module will deliver a burst of phase angle firing. Used, typically, to perform threshold current limiting in Burst Firing.
Ramp Status	Displays the safety ramp status as 'Ramping' or 'Finished'.

Examples

Safety Ramps, Soft Start and Delayed Trigger, firing types



Resistive load

Safety (Magnetisation) Ramp (4 cycles) Output voltage Line supply Delayed trigger angle



Figure 96 Safety ramp (burst firing) examples

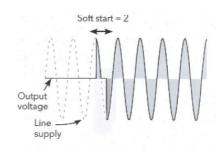


Figure 97 Soft start example

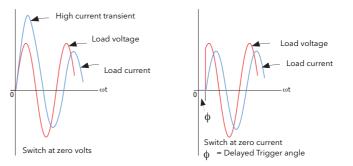
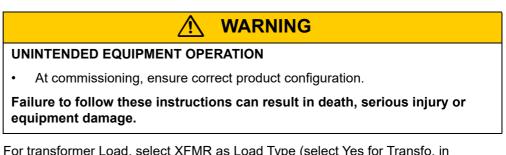
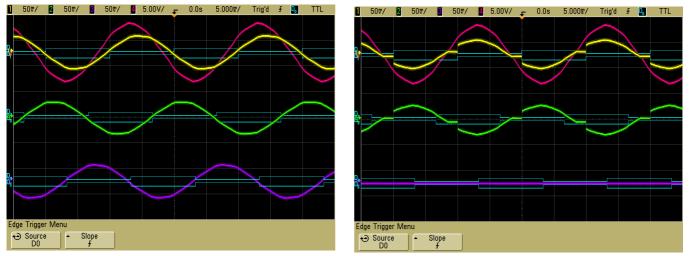


Figure 98 Delayed trigger definition

Note: Waveforms have been idealized for clarity.



For transformer Load, select XFMR as Load Type (select Yes for Transfo. in QuickCode). For transformer Load, in burst firing mode, without soft start, adjust Delayed Triggering (DelayedTrigger) to minimize inrush current.



Unbalanced Load Management (ULM)

Figure 99 Waveforms; balanced load left, unbalanced load right (ULM off)



Figure 100 Waveform, unbalanced load (L3 load open circuit), ULM option on, automatically balances thyristor gates and remaining phases 1 and 2.

This area of configuration allows the user to configure the analog and digital inputs and to view the status of the Relay output. The configuration is separated into the following areas:

- "Analog Input configuration" on page 167.
- "Digital Input configuration" on page 170.
- "Relay status" on page 171.

🌐 EPack.192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack - Parameter Ex 🔳 🗖 🔀					
$\leftarrow \cdot \rightarrow \cdot \bigcirc \bigcirc \cdot \leftarrow \cdot \rightarrow \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \cdot \leftarrow - \rightarrow \rightarrow \bigcirc \bullet \cap \bullet \bullet$					
AnalogIP Digita	Relay				
Name	Description	Address	Value		
IO.AnalogIP -	7 sublists, 0 parameters	\$			

Figure 101 Top level IO menu

Analog Input configuration

The configuration for the analog input is divided into a number of areas:

Ai Main, AlmDis, AlmDet, AlmSig, AlmLat, AlmAck, AlmStop AlmRelay

Ai Main

Ma	in AlmDis	AlmDet AlmSig AlmLat Alm	Ack AlmS	top AlmRelay		3	Value Volts0to10 (0)
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From		Volts0to10 (0)
Ì	Туре	Specify the input type	1976	Volts0to10 (0) 💌			Volts1to5(1)
Ø	OffsetLow	Low input range for scaling	1981	0.00		1	Volts2to10 (2)
Ø	RangeHigh	High input range for scaling t	1977	100.00			Volts0to5 (3)
Ø	RangeLow	Low input range for scaling to	1978	0.00			mA0to20 (4)
	PV .	Process variable	1980	0.00			mA4to20 (5)
	MeasVal	Measured value	1979	-0.01			

Figure 102 iTools analog input page

Туре	Allows the type of input to be set as one of: 0 to 10V, 1 to 5V, 2 to 10V, 0 to 5V, 0 to 20mA, 4 to 20mA. For pinout details, see Figure 14.
OffsetLow	An offset, which is used to adjust measured value. The parameter value can be set from -1 to 1 in electrical units (depending on input type) and is added to MeasVal. This can be used to compensate for any accuracy issues or electrical noise on the analog input.
RangeHigh	High range of input for scaling from measurement units to process units. PV is clipped to range high if input goes over range.
RangeLow	Low range of input for scaling from measurement units to process units. PV is clipped to range low if input goes under range.
PV	The scaled value in process units. Clipped to the Range High or Range Low value if the signal goes over range or under range respectively.
MeasVal	The value at the instrument terminals, including the OffsetLow parameter value in electrical units.

AlmDis

Allows the user to enable or disable alarms individually.

Example

Figure 103 shows an iTools page for Almdis. Pages for the other Alm parameters are similar.

	58-111-110-502-ID255	-EPack - Param	eter Ex 🔳 🗖 🔀
			–j⊒
Main AlmDis Al	mDet AlmSig AlmLat Alm	Ack AlmStop A	ImRelay
Name	Description	Address	Value
🥖 OverCurrent	Process alarm: Over Current	1981	Enable (0) 💌
10.AnalogIP.Alm	Dis - 1 parameter		

Figure 103 AlmDis example

AlmDet

Indicates whether each individual alarm has been detected and is currently active. This alarm becomes active if the input current goes higher than 25mA, in this case the Analog Input type is automatically switched to 0-10V to avoid damage.

AlmSig

Signals that an alarm has occurred, and whether or not it is a latched. If the user wishes to assign an alarm to for example a relay then the appropriate signaling parameter should be wired.

AlmLat

Allows each individual alarm to be configured as latching, the latched state is shown in the alarm signaling parameter.

AlmAck

Allows each individual alarm to be acknowledged. On an alarm being acknowledged the related signaling parameter (Almsig) is cleared. If the alarm is still active as shown by the detection parameter (Almdet) the alarm may not be acknowledged. The acknowledge parameters automatically clear after being written.

AlmStop

Allows each individual alarm type to be configured to stop the power channel firing. ALMSTOP is activated by the signaling parameter (Almsig) and may be latching or not according to the AlmLat setting for the alarm.

AlmRelay

Causes the relay to be controlled by this alarm

Note: When utilizing Almrelay function ensure FaultDet/CustomAlarm parameter remains wired to IO.Relay/PV.

This allows the user to configure each of the digital inputs.

■ ← 1		F-local.ID255-EPack. PH - Parameter Ex a 💼	plorer (IO.Dig	ital)		s Value 2 IpVolts (0) ▼ 3 IpVolts (0)
	Name	Description	Address	Value W	fired	j IpContact (1)
1	Туре	Specify the digital IO type	1912	IpContact (1) -		Op10Vuser (2)
1	Invert	Invert the sense of the digital IO	1913	No (0) 💌		
	PV	Process variable	1915	0		
	MeasVal	Measured value	1914	0		
	10VuserStat	Status of 10V user	1917	Good (0) 🔻 🛶	<u> </u>	Good (0) 🔻
						Good (0) BAD (1)
10	.Digital.1 - 5 p	arameters				

Figure 104 iTools Digital Input configuration page, (digital input 2 displayed)

Parameters

Туре	Select to configure the Logic Input type:
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	0 = IpVolts.
	1 = IpContact.
	2 = Op10Vuser.
	For pinout details, see Figure 14.
Invert	Sets the inversion status to 'No' or 'Yes'.
	When set to 'No', there is no inversion (e.g. if MeasVal = 0 then PV = 0).
	When set to 'Yes', an inversion takes place (e.g. if MeasVal = 0 then PV = 1)
PV	The current state of the input, after any inversion has been applied.
MeasVal	For inputs, this shows the value measured at the instrument terminals, in electrical units.
10VuserStat	Displays the 10V user output status;
	Good (0) = No issue can deliver 10V
	Bad (1) = No 10V output, possible short circuit or excessive current requirement.
	Example: The 10V user output would typically be used to connect a potentiometer located on a cabinet's front fascia, which would be used to adjust setpoint values via analog input.

Note: The 10V user output is available using digital input 2.

Relay status

Name	Description	Address	Value
PV	Process Variable		value 1
		2138	
MeasVal	Measured value	2139	0

Figure 105 iTools relay status page

PV	This shows the status of the input to the relay as either 'On' (True) or 'Off' (False).
Meas Val	Shows the current state of the relay coil. 1 = energized; 0 = de-energized, where 'energized' is 'off' and 'de-energized' is 'on'. For pinout details, see Figure 14. For specification, see Relay Specification (page 261).

Instrument configuration is divided into the following sections:

- "Instrument Display configuration" on page 172
- "Instrument Hardware configuration" on page 173
- "Instrument options" on page 174
- "Scaling Factor" on page 175

)is		ration Options ScalingFactor		
-	Name	Description	Address	Value Wired From
Ì	Language	Selected Language	5030	English (1) 💌
	SerialNo	Serial Number	5031	123456
Ì	DevName	The device name to appear on the displa	5032	EPack3PH
Ì	LabelO	The first label name to appear on the disp	5036	Vavg
Ì	Label1	The second label name to appear on the	5038	SP
Ì	Param0MB	Modbus Address of first Parameter	5040	279
	Param1MB	Modbus Address of second Parameter	5041	1065

Figure 106 Top level instrument configuration page

Instrument Display configuration

	🌐 EPack. 192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack - Parameter Explorer 🗐 🗐 🔀							
	Name	Description	Address	Value		French (2)		
	Language	Selected Language	5028	English (1) 💌		German (4)		
	SerialNo	Serial Number	5029	1		j Italian (8)		
	DevName	Device name show on the op	5030	EPack		3 Spanish (16)		
	Label0	Label0	5034	LV				
	Label1	Label1	5036	SP				
1	Param0MB	Param0MB modbus address	5038	256				
	Param1MB	Param1MB modbus address	5039	1497				
În	strument.Dis	play - 7 parameters						

Figure 107 Instrument display configuration page

Language Serial No	Select required language for subsequent displays. Read only. Displays the factory-set Serial number of the unit.
Dev Name	The device name as it appears at the user display.
Label 0(1)	The text that appears on the home page for the two parameters defined by the addresses listed in Param0 and Param1. User-definable 3 characters (maximum).
Param0(1)MB	This is the Modbus address of the first (second) parameter to be displayed in the home screen of the instrument.

Instrument Hardware configuration

The current hardware configuration.

Dis	play Chains	Configuration Options Scalir	ngFactor		
-	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From
	NetType	The type of network to be us	5071	3PH (1) 🔻	
0	PowerType	Power Module type	5076	Type_63A (1) 🔹	
1	TimerRes	Sets resolution of time param	5075	10thSecs (0) 💌	
1	Backlight Dimm Display Backlight Dimming		5074	Yes (1) 🔹	
	DisplayID	Display Identifier	5072	0	
	Software	Software version of the produ	5077	V5.02	
	EIPSoftware	Software version of the Ether	5081	V1.1	
	PNSoftware	Software version of the Profir	5085	V1.0	
	HWversion	HW version of the product	108	0	

Figure 108 Instrument configuration

Net Type	Network type. This is set at the factory and cannot be changed by the user. 0 = 3 phase 1 = Single phase 2 = 2 phase
Power Type	This is set at the factory and cannot be changed by the user, (0 = 32A, 1 = 63A, 2 = 100A, 3 = 125A)
Timer Res	Resolution of time parameters 0 = 10ths of seconds (100ms); 1 = 10ths of minutes (6 seconds)
Backlight_Dimming	Option to control the display's backlight by switching dimming on to reduce power consumption: 0 = No (deactivate dimming)
	1 = Yes (activates dimming)
PsuType	Power Supply rating Voltage 0 = 24V
	1 = 500V
DisplayID	Displays details of the manufacturer display (screen) type: 0 = Tianma 1 = Densitron 2 = Jinghua
Software	Software version of the product.
HWversion	Displays product hardware version set at factory (read-only parameter).

Instrument options

← ▼ → ▼ Display Chains	Configuration Options ScalingFactor			-
Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From
SerialNo	Serial Number	5101	123456	
Software	Software Software version of the product		E5.55	
🖉 Passcode1	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1 5098		XXXXX	
🖉 Passcode2	Pass Code for Features Secure V	Vord 2 5099	XXXXXX	
Passcode3	Pass Code for Features Secure V	Vord 3 5100	XXXXXX	
•	m			4

Figure 109 Instrument configuration page

SerialNo	The instrument serial number.
Software	The version of software running on this instrument
Passcode1 (2)(3)	Pass Code for 'Features Secure Word' 1(2)(3).

Scaling Factor

Allows scaling factors to be entered for a number of parameters. In iTools, the scaling factors are arranged in 'tabs' of which, for the sake of clarity, this document depicts only one (SetProv).

These scaling factors are applied in Modbus transactions when access to relevant parameters is made using low range address (i.e. not the IEEE region), and also by default on parameters defined in I/O gateway for cyclic exchange in Profinet and EthernetIP. See Fieldbus Gateway section for configuration.

🌐 EPack.192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack - Parameter Explorer 🗐 🗖 🔀								
⇐ • ⇒ • 🗈	3 🔁		-ja					
IO Math2 I	Network Control SetProv F	aultdet Energy Modultr	FiringOP Instrum 🔹 🕨					
Name	Description	Address	Value					
Instrument.Sca	Instrument.ScalingFactor.IO - 1 sublist, 0 parameters							

Figure 110 Scaling factor top level menu.

SetProv Example

🖽 EPack.192-	168-111-10-502-ID255-	EPack - Pa	arameter Explorer		21 X
← - → - 6	. 💼			-ja	5 x100 (;
10 Math2	Network Control SetProv	Faultdet Er	nergy Modultr FiringOP	Instrum 🔹 🔪	2 x1 (0) 2 x10 (1)
Name	Description	Address	Value		x100 (2)
🖉 LocalSP	Scaling Factor: Local setpoi	r 28845	x100 (2) 🗷		3 ×1000 (3)
🖉 Remote	Scaling Factor: Remote setp	» 28851	x100 (2) 💌		/10 (4)
🥖 Limit	Scaling Factor: Setpoint limit	28852	x100 (2) 💌		3 /100 (5)
🖉 WorkingSP	Scaling Factor: Working or a	a 28846	x100 (2) 💌		/1000 (6)
🖉 RampRate	Scaling Factor: Ramp rate for	28848	x1 (0) 💌		
🖉 HiRange	Scaling Factor: High range of	28854	x100 (2) 💌		
🖉 EngWorkingS	P Scaling Factor: Working Sel	r 28856	x100 (2) 💌		
Instrument.Sca	alingFactor.SetProv - 7 p	arameters			

In the above example it can be seen that all the Set point provider parameters are scaled x100, except for Ramp Rate which is not scaled (i.e. the scaling factor = 1). As can also be seen, the scaling factors available are x1, x10, x100, x1000, \div 10, \div 100, \div 1000.

If the LocalSP, for example, has a scaling factor of x100, as above, then a value of say 5000 means in fact that the real value is 50.00.

Notes:

- 1. The above example shows the default scaling formats set they are User configurable.
- 2. Values are rounded up/down.

This monitors a wired parameter and records its maximum value, minimum value and the cumulative time that its value spends above a configurable threshold. An alarm can be set up to become active when the time-over-threshold exceeds a further threshold.

					TimeAbove (read-only)	\mathbf{X}
Ⅲ ← 1	EPack.192-1 →	68-111-10-502-ID255-I	Pack - Pa	rameter Ex 🔳 🔲 🔀 - 🖂	Current Value 0 New ⊻alue [h 0 m 0 s 0	ms
	Name	Description	Address	Value	OK Cancel Apply	
	In	Input	3111	0.00	OK Cancer Apply	
	Max	Maximum value	3113	0.00		
	Min	Minimum value	3114	0.00		
	Threshold	Timer Threshold Value	3110	1.00		
	DaysAbove	Days Above Threshold	3118	0	AL	X
	TimeAbove	Time in Hours Above Thresh	3115	0	AlarmTime	
	AlarmDays	Alarm time (in days) above th	3119	0		
	AlarmTime	Alarm time above threshold	3117	0	Current Value 1h 13m 12s 100ms	
	Out	Timer Alarm Output	3116	Off (0) 💌	N. K.I	1
	Reset	Reset All Monitor Functions	3112	No (0) 💌	New <u>V</u> alue 1 h 13 m 12 s 100	ms
	InStatus	Input Status	3120	Good (0) 💌		
IP	Monitor.1 - 1	12 parameters			OK Cancel Apply	

Figure 111 iTools input monitor page (IPMon1)

Parameters

In	The parameter to be monitored. Normally wired (using iTools) to a parameter, but a numeric entry can be made for testing purposes.
Max	The maximum value reached by the parameter since last reset.
Min	The minimum value reached by the parameter since last reset.
Threshold	This value acts as a trigger for the 'Time Above' measurement.
Days above	Shows how many complete days the parameter value has spent above the Threshold value (continuously or intermittently) since last reset. The 'Time Above' value should be added to 'Days Above' in order to find the total time.
Time Above	Shows how many hours, minutes and tenths of minutes that the parameter value has spent above the threshold value (continuously or intermittently) since last reset, or since the last complete day. (once the value exceeds 23:59.9, the 'Days Above' value is incremented and 'Time Aboveis reset to 00:00.0.) The 'Time Above' value should be added to 'Days Above' in order to find the total time.
Alarm Days	Together with 'Alarm Time' this defines a 'total time above threshold' value, which, when exceeded, sets the Alarm out parameter 'On'.
Alarm Time	See 'Alarm Days' above.
Reset	Resetting causes the Max. and Min. values to be set to the current value, sets the 'Days Above' value to zero, and the 'Time Above' value to 00:00.0.
Status	Shows the status of the input parameter as either 'Good' or 'Bad'.

EPack

Lgc2 (Two Input Logic Operator) Menu

This logic operator block provides a number of two-input logic operations. The output is always a 'Boolean' (logic 0 or 1) no matter whether the inputs are analog or digital. For analog inputs, any value below 0.5 is deemed to be logic 0 (off). A value equal to or greater than 0.5 is treated as a logic 1 (on).

Either input can be 'inverted' as a part of the configuration (that is, a high input is treated as a low input and *vice-versa*.)

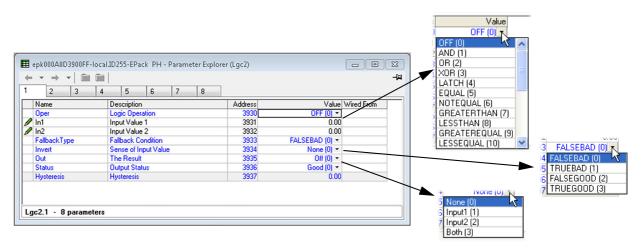
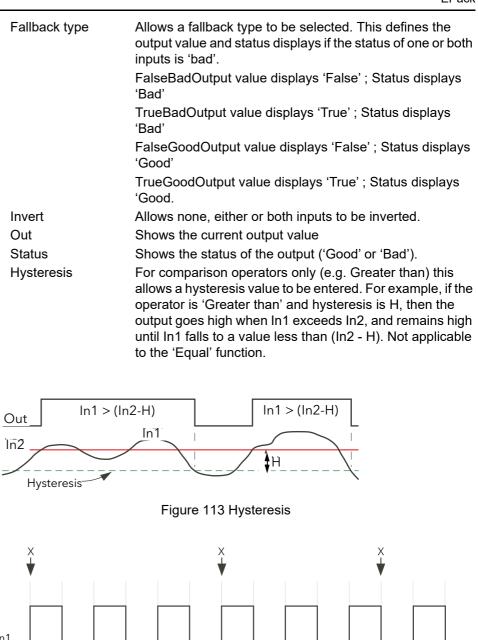
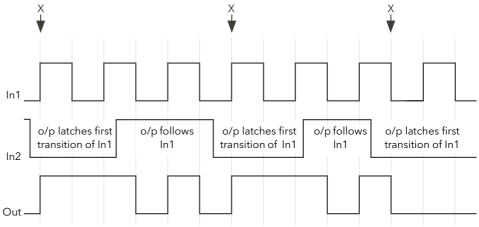


Figure 112 Lgc2 page (Lgc2 1)

Lgc2 Parameters

Oper	The	/s the user to select a logic operation for the block. descriptions below assume neither input is inverted. = 1 or on; Low = 0 or off.
	Off	No logic operation selected.
	AND	Out is high if both inputs high, otherwise Out is low.
	OR	Out is high if either or both inputs high, otherwise Outis low.
	XOR	Output high if either (but not both) inputs high. Low if neither or both inputs are high.
	Latch	If In2 low, Out latches next transition of In1. Value remains latched until In2 goes low, when Out = In1 (see figure 113).
	Equal	Out high if both inputs are equal, otherwise output is low.
	Not Equal	Out is high if inputs are unequal. Out is low if inputs are equal.
	Greater tha	n
		Out is high if In1 value greater than In2 value, other- wise Out is low.
	Less than	Out is high if In1 value less than In2 value, otherwise Out is low.
	GreaterEqu	lal
		Out is high if In1 value is equal to or greater than In2 value, otherwise Out is low.
	LessEqual	Out is high if In1 value is less than or equal to In2 value, otherwise Out is low.
In1		ed, shows the value of In1; if not, allows the user to [.] a value.
In2		ed, shows the value of In2; if not, allows the user to a value.





When In2 goes low, Out follows the next positive or negative transition of In1 (points 'X') and latches at this value until In2 goes high. When In2 is high, Out follows In1.

Figure 114 Latch operation

Lgc8 (Eight-input Logic Operator) Configuration

This allows between two and eight inputs to be combined using an AND, OR or Exclusive OR (EXOR) logic function. The inputs may be individually inverted, and the output can also be inverted, thus allowing the full range of logic functions to be implemented.

• • • • • □ 0	4 5 6			s va
Name	Description	Address	Value Wired From	
Oper	Operation	3740	OFF (0) 👻	2 OFF (0)
Numin	Number of Inputs	3742	2	1 AND (1)
InInvert	Invert Selected Inputs	3741	0	2 OR (2)
OutInvert	Invert the Output	3752	No (0) 👻	3 XOB (3)
ln1	Input 1 Value	3743	Off (0) -	
ln2	Input 2 Value	3744	Off (0) -	4 STATUS (4)
In3	Input 3 Value	3745	Off (0) 👻	
In4	Input 4 Value	3746	Off (0) -	
In5	Input 5 Value	3747	Off (0) 👻	
In6	Input 6 Value	3748	Off (0) -	
In7	Input 7 Value	3749	Off (0) 👻	
In8	Input 8 Value	3750	Off (0) -	
Out	Output Value	3751	0	

Figure 115 Lgc8 configuration page

Oper	Allows selection of AND, OR or Exclusive OR functions (or OFF).			
	AND = output is high only if all inputs are high			
	OR = output is high if any or all inputs are high			
	XOR = output is high if an odd number of inputs are high, and low if an even number of inputs are high. Logically, a cascaded XOR function: ((((((($(\ln 1 \oplus \ln 2) \oplus \ln 3) \oplus \ln 3$))))			
	Status = Bit to bit OR of the inputs concatenated into a word.			
Numin	Set the number of inputs to between two and eight inclusive. This number defines how many invert keys appear in 'Invert', and how many Input value pages appear.			
InInvert	Allows the user to invert individual inputs prior to operation.			
	This is a status word with one bit per input, the left-hand bit inverts input 1. When configuring over comms, the invert parameter is interpreted as a bitfield where:			
	0x1 - input 1			
	0x2 - input 2			
	0x3 - input 3			
	0x4 - input 4			
	0x5 - input 5			
	0x6 - input 6			
	0x7 - input 7			
	0x8 - input 8			
Out Invert	No = normal output; 'Yes' means that the output is inverted, allowing NAND and NOR functions to be implemented.			
In1	The state (on or off) of the first input			
In2 onwards	The state of the remaining inputs			
Out	The Output value of the function (i.e. On or Off)			

LGC8 schematic

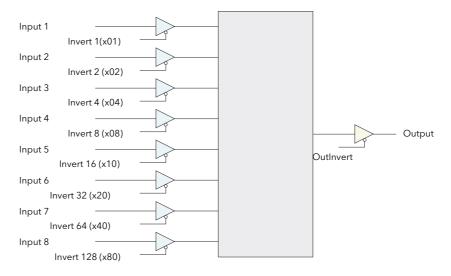


Figure 116 LGC8 Schematic

Invert input decoding table

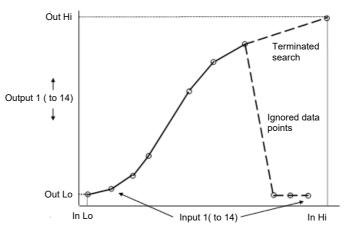
Input		Input		Input		Input	
87654321	Hex Dec	87654321	Hex Dec	87654321	Hex Dec	87654321	Hex Dec
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	00 0 01 1 02 2 03 3 04 4 05 5 06 6 07 7 08 8 09 9 0A 10 0B 11 0C 12 0D 13 0E 14 0F 15 10 16 11 17 12 18 13 19 14 20 15 21 16 22 17 23 19 25 14 20 15 21 16 22 17 23 19 25 14 20 15 21 16 22 17 31 22 34 23 35 24 36 1B 27 39 22 24 36 25 37 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 37 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 46 25 37 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 53 24 36 25 37 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 53 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 53 26 38 27 39 28 40 25 53 37 55 38 56 39 57 38 56 39 36 30 61 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 35 53 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 51 34 52 35 53 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 57 38 56 39 36 30 61 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 36 54 37 55 38 56 37 39 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 36 54 37 55 38 56 39 36 30 61 30 61	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	40 64 41 65 42 66 43 67 44 68 45 69 44 68 45 69 44 68 45 69 47 71 48 72 49 73 44 76 40 77 42 76 44 78 50 80 51 81 52 82 53 83 54 84 55 86 57 87 58 89 50 96 61 97 62 98 64 100 65 102 66 102 67 103 68 104 69 105 66 102 67 111 73 115	8 N	80 128 81 129 82 130 83 131 84 132 85 133 86 134 87 135 88 136 89 137 8A 138 80 137 8A 138 88 139 8C 140 8D 141 8E 142 8F 143 90 144 91 145 92 146 93 147 94 148 95 149 96 150 97 151 98 152 99 153 9A 154 99 153 9A 154 99 153 9A 154 99 153 9A 154 95 156 9D 157 9E 158 9F 159 9D 157 9E 158 9F 159 9D 160 A1 161 A2 162 A3 163 A4 164 A5 165 A6 166 A7 167 A8 168 A9 169 A1 177 B0 176 B1 177 B0 176 B1 177 B1 177 B0 176 B1 177 B1	8 7 N 5 N N 2 1 8 7 N 5 N 3 N N 8 7 N 5 N 3 N 1 8 7 N 5 N 3 2 1 8 7 N 5 N 3 2 1 8 7 N 5 4 N N N 8 7 N 5 4 N N 1 8 7 N 5 4 3 N 1 8 7 N 5 4 3 N 1 8 7 N 5 4 3 2 1 8 7 6 N N N N 1 8 7 6 N N N 1 8 7 6 N N 1 1 8 7	C0 192 C1 193 C2 194 C3 195 C4 196 C5 197 C6 198 C7 199 C8 200 C9 201 CA 202 CE 206 CF 207 D0 208 D1 209 D2 21C D4 212 D5 213 D6 214 D7 215 CE 206 CF 207 DA 218 D1 209 D2 21C D4 212 D5 213 D6 214 D7 215 CE 206 CF 207 D4 212 D5 213 D6 214 D7 215 CE 206 CF 207 D4 212 D5 213 D6 214 D7 215 CE 206 CF 207 CE 206 CF 207 CE 206 CF 207 CE 206 CF 207 CE 206 CF 207 CE 208 CF 207 CE 208 CE 208 CF 207 CE 208 CF 207 CF 207 CE 208 CF 207 CF

Example: Decimal 146 means that inputs 8, 5 and 2 are inverted.

The Lin16 function block converts an input signal into an output PV using a series of up to 15 straight lines to characterize the conversion.

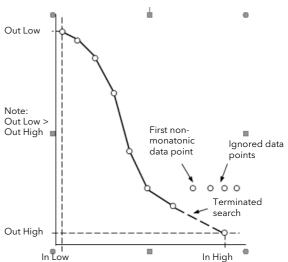
The function block provides the following behaviour.

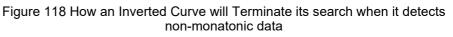
- 1. The Input values must be monotonic and constantly rising.
- 2. To convert the MV to the PV, the algorithm will search the table of inputs until the matching segment is found. Once found, the points either side will be used to interpolate the output value.
- If during the search, a point is found which is not above the previous (below for inverted) then the search will be terminated and the segment taken from the last good point to the extreme (In Hi-Out Hi) see following diagram.





- If the input value is outside the translated range then the output status will indicate Bad, and the value will be limited to the nearest output limit.
- The units and resolution parameters will be used for the output values. The input values resolution and units will be specified by the source of the wire.
- If the 'Out Low' is higher than the 'Out High' then the translation will be inverted





Notes:

- 1. The linearization block works on rising inputs/rising outputs or rising inputs/falling outputs. It is not suitable for outputs which rise and fall on the same curve.
- 2. Input Lo/Output Lo and Input Hi/Output Hi are entered first to define the low and high points of the curve. It is not necessary to define all 15 intermediate points if the accuracy is not required. Points not defined will be ignored and a straight line fit will apply between the last point defined and the Input Hi/Output Hi point. If the input source has a bad status (sensor break, or over-range) then the output value will also have a bad status.

Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities

The custom linearization feature can also be used to compensate for inaccuracies in the sensor or measurement system. The intermediate points are, therefore, available in Operator or Engineer mode so that known discontinuities in the curve can be calibrated out. The diagram below shows an example of the type of discontinuity which can occur in the linearization of a temperature sensor.

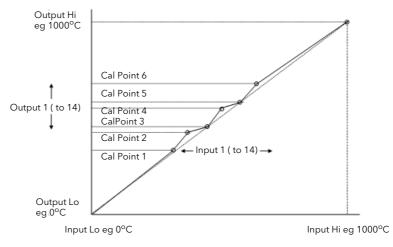


Figure 119 Compensation for Sensor Discontinuities

The calibration of the sensor uses the same procedure as described above. Adjust the output (displayed) value against the corresponding input value to compensate for any inaccuracies in the standard linearization of the sensor.

Name	Description	Address		Vired From	E	None (0) C F K Temp (1)	١
Units	Units of the Linearised Output	4251	None (0) 🔻			V (2)	۶
Resolution	Resolution of the Linearised Out		×(0) *		L.	mV (3)	
🖉 In	Input Measurement to Linearise	4253	0.00		-	A (4)	
FallbackType	Fallback Type	4287	ClipBad (0) 📍			mA (5)	_
🖉 FallbackValue	Fallback Value	4288	0.00		-	PH (6) mmHa (7)	-
Out	Linearisation Result	4254	0.00			psi (8)	
InLowLimit	Input Low Limit	4255	0.00			Bar (9)	-
OutLowLimit	Output Low Limit	4256	0.00			mBar (10)	-
InHighLimit	Input High Limit	4285	0.00			PercentRH (11)	
OutHighLimit	Output High Limit	4286	0.00		_	Percent (12)	_
🖉 In1	Input Point 1	4257	0.00	$\langle \rangle$	L	mmWG (13)	
🖉 Out1	Output Point 1	4258	0.00			inWG (14) inWW (15)	
🖉 In2	Input Point 2	4259	0.00			Ohms (16)	
🖉 Out2	Output Point 2	4260	0.00			PSIG (17)	
🖉 In3	Input Point 3	4261	0.00	$\langle \rangle$		PercentO2 (18)	
🖉 Out3	Output Point 3	4262	0.00	\		PPM (19)	
🖉 In4	Input Point 4	4263	0.00	\		PercentCO2 (20)	
🖉 Out4	Output Point 4	4264	0.00			PercentCarb (21) PercentPerSec (
🖉 In5	Input Point 5	4265	0.00		N	RelTemperature	
🖉 Out5	Output Point 5	4266	0.00		Ν	RelTemperature	
🖉 In6	Input Point 6	4267	0.00			Vacuum (24)	
🖉 Out6	Output Point 6	4268	0.00			Secs (25)	_
🖉 In7	Input Point 7	4269	0.00			Mins (26)	-
🖉 Out7	Output Point 7	4270	0.00			Hours (27) W (28)	-
🖉 In8	Input Point 8	4271	0.00			Z (29)	
🖉 Out8	Output Point 8	4272	0.00			Hz (30)	
🖉 In9	Input Point 9	4273	0.00		\		
🖉 Out9	Output Point 9	4274	0.00		ClipBa	id (0)	
🖉 in10	Input Point 10	4275	0.00		ClipGo		
🖉 Out10	Output Point 10	4276	0.00		FallBa		
🖉 In11	Input Point 11	4277	0.00		FallGo		
Out11	Output Point 11	4278	0.00			aleBad (4)	
🖉 In12	Input Point 12	4279	0.00		i[Down8	ScaleBad (8	
🖉 Out12	Output Point 12	4280	0.00				
🖉 In13	Input Point 13	4281	0.00				
Out13	Output Point 13	4282	0.00				
🖉 In14	Input Point 14	4283	0.00				
Out14	Output Point 14	4284	0.00			ood (0)	r
Status	Status of The Block	4250	Good (0) *			AD (1)	L
Lin16 - 39 para			- 1-7		10.		è.

Units	Units of the linearized output.
Resolution	Resolution of the output value
In	Input measurement to linearise between InLowLimit and InHighLimit. Wire to the source for the custom linearization.
FallbackType	Fallback Type
	The fallback strategy will come into effect if the status of the input value is bad or if the input value is outside the range of input high scale and input low scale.
Fallback Value	In the event of a bad status, the output may be configured to adopt the fallback value. This allows the strategy to dictate a known output in the event of a fallback type being indicated.
Out	Result of the linearization
InLowLimit	Adjust to the low input value
OutLowLimit	Adjust to correspond to the low input value
InHighLimit	Adjust to the high input value
OutHighLimit	Adjust to correspond to the high input value
In1	Adjust to the first break point
Out1	Adjust to correspond to input 1
In14	Adjust to the last break point
Out14	Adjust to correspond to input 14
Status	Status of the block. A value of zero indicates a healthy conversion.

The 16 point linearization does not require all 16 points to be used. If fewer points are required, then the curve can be terminated by setting the first unwanted value to be less than the previous point.

Conversely if the curve is a continuously decreasing one, then it may be terminated by setting the first unwanted point above the previous one.

Math2 Menu

This feature allows a range of two-input mathematical functions to be performed. The available functions are listed below.

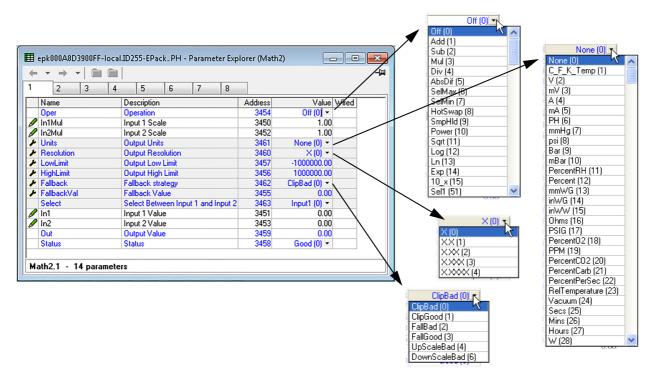


Figure 120 Math2 configuration page

Math2 Parameters

Note: For the sake of this description, 'High', '1' and 'True' are synonymous, as are 'Low', '0' and 'False'.

Defir input	nes the mathematical function to be applied to the s
None	No operation.
Add	Adds input one to input two.
Sub	Subtracts input two from input one.
Mul	Multiplies inputs one and two together.
Div	Divides input one by input two.
AbsDif	The difference in value between inputs one and two, ignoring sign.
SelMax	Output = the higher of inputs one and two.
SelMin	Output = the lower of inputs one and two.
HotSwap	Input one appears as the output for as long as input one is 'good'. If input one status is bad, input two ap- pears as the output instead.
SmpHld	Sample and Hold. The output follows input one, for as long as input two is high (sample). When input two goes low (hold), the output is held, at the value current when the output went low, until input two goes high again. Input two is normally a digital value (low = 0 or high =1); when it is an analog value, then any positive non-zero value is interpreted as a high.
Power	Output = Input one raised to the power of input two $(In1^{In2})$. For example if input one has the value 4.2, and the value of input two is 3, then output = $4.2^3 = 74.09$ (approx.).

	Sqrt	The output is the square root of input one. Input two is not used.
	Log	Log base 10: Output = {Log ₁₀ (In 1)}. Input two is not used.
	Ln	Log base e: Output = {Log _n (In1)}. Input two is not used.
	Exp	Output = e ^(input one) . Input two is not used.
	10_x	Output = 10 ^(input one) . Input two is not used.
	Sel1	If the Select input is high, input two appears at the output; if the Select input is low, input one appears at the output.
In1(2) Mul	Th	e scaling factor to be applied to input one (two).
Units		ows the user to choose units for the output (see figure 0).
Resolution		e the up and down arrows to position the decimal point required.
Low Limit		e low limit for all inputs to the function and for the lback value.
High Limit		e high limit for all inputs to the function and for the lback value.
Fallback	in	e fallback strategy comes into play if the status of the out value is 'Bad', or if its value lies outside the range igh limit- Low limit).
	Clip Bad	The output is set to the high or low limit as appropriate; output status is set to 'Bad'.
	Clip Goo	d The output is set to the high or low limit as appropriate; output status is set to 'Good'.
	Fall Bad	The output is set to the fallback value (below); output status is set to 'Bad'.
	Fall Goo	d The output is set to the fallback value (below); output status is set to 'Good'.
	Upscale	
	-	The output is set to the high limit and Status is set to 'Bad'.
	Downsca	ale Bad
		The output is set to the low limit and Status is set to 'Bad'.
Fallback value		ows the user to enter the value to which the output is set Fallback = Fall Good, or Fall Bad.
Select		litable only if Oper = Select. Allows input one or input two be selected for output.
In1	Inj	put one value
In2	In	put two value
Out	m	e output value resulting from the configured athematical operation. If either input is 'Bad', or if the sult is out of range, the fallback strategy is adopted.
Status	Us	dicates the status of the operation as 'Good' or 'Bad'. sed to flag conditions and can be used as an interlock for ner operations.

Modulator Configuration

This function implements the modulation type firing modes such as fixed and variable period modulation.

Note: For the sake of completeness, all Modulator parameters are shown in the figure below. Normally, for the sake of clarity, non-relevant (shaded) parameters should be hidden using the '>Parameter Availability Settings...>Hide Parameters and Lists when Not Relevant' menu item.

	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From	
	Mode	Modulator mode	1382	BurstVar (1) 💌		BurstVar (1) BurstFix (2)
	In	Input of the modulator block	1377	0.00	Control.Diag.Outp	Lac (3)
	Out	Modulator logical output	1376	0.00		PA (4)
	MinOnTime	Minimum on time for variable modulator	1378	16		
	CycleTime	Cycle time for fixed modulator	1379	100		
	LgcMode	Logic mode cycle selection	1380	FullCycle (1) *		5 HalfCycle (1)
	SwitchPA	Switch Burst PA	1385	Burst (0) 💌	<u>`</u>	5 HalfCycle (0) りょう 1 FullCycle (1)
	PLMin	Load management interface input	1381	0		
	LgcMaxCycleTime	Logic Mode Max Cycle Time	1387	750		j Burst (0) 🐂
•						
Μ	Modultr - 9 parameters					

Figure 121 Modulator menu page

Modulator parameters

Mode	Select the required firing mode from 'Logic', 'PA' (Phase angle) 'Intelligent Half Cycle' ^a , 'BurstVar' (Burst firing - minimum on time) or 'BurstFix' (Burst firing - cycle time).
In	This is the value that the modulator is required to deliver.
Out	The output logic signal controlling the power module on and off times, normally wired to the input of the firing block. For Mode = Phase angle, this is a phase angle demand.
Min On Time	For Variable Period Modulation, this sets the minimum on time in supply voltage periods. At 50% demand from the modulator, Ton = Toff = Minimum on time, and Cycle time is $2 \times Minimum$ on time = Modulation period. The minimum off time is equal to 'Min on time'.
Cycle Time	For Fixed Period Modulation, this is the cycle time in supply voltage periods.
Logic Mode	For Logic Firing Modulation, Half cycle ¹ sets firing stop to the next zero crossing; Full cycle sets firing stop at the zero crossing of the next full cycle.
Switch PA	Allows the user to impose Phase Angle firing, overriding the configured Burst Mode as displayed in 'Mode', above.
PLMin	Not applicable to this software release.
LgcMaxCycleTime	Max cycle time for Logic mode. This is set in mains periods.This is the equivalent to the modulation period and it is used to compute Network electrical quantities when there is no modulation shift.

a. Only available with 3 phase Star with Neutral (4S) and Open delta (6D) see Load Configurations (page 50).

This identifies the type of electrical network to be controlled, and this, in turn defines how the network's electrical measurements are presented. The configuration is divided into a number of areas:

- Meas
- Setup
- AlmDis
- AlmDet
- AlmSig
- AlmLat,
- AlmAck,
- AlmStopAlmRelay

Network Meas Menu

s Setup AlmDis	AlmDet AlmSig AlmLat AlmAck AlmStop AlmF	Relay	
Name	Description	Address	Value Wired From
Frequency	Frequency of the line	267	0.00
Vline	Line voltage measurement	256	0.00
Vline2	Line voltage measurement	270	0.00
Vline3	Line voltage measurement	271	0.00
	Irms of the load	257	0.00
12	Irms2 of the load	272	0.00
13	Irms3 of the load	273	0.00
lavg	Average value of Irms	278	0.00
IsqBurst	Average square value of load current in burst firi	258	0.00
lsq	Square value of the load current	259	0.00
IsqMax	Maximum squared current in a 3 phase network.	280	0.00
IrmsMax	Maximum rms current in a 3 phase network.	282	0.00
V	Vrms of the load	260	0.00
V2	Vrms2 of the load	274	0.00
V3	Vrms3 of the load	275	0.00
Vavg	Average value of Vrms	279	0.00
VsqBurst	Average square value of the load voltage in bur:	268	0.00
Vsq	Square value of load voltage	261	0.00
VsqMax	Maximum squared voltages in the 3 phase netwo	281	0.00
VrmsMax	Maximum rms voltages in the 3 phase network.	283	0.00
PBurst	True Power measurement in burst firing	262	0.00
P	True power measurement.	263	0.00
S	Apparent power measurement	264	0.00
PF	Power Factor	265	0.00
Z	Load impedance	266	0.00
Z2	Load impedance2	276	0.00
Z3	Load impedance3	277	0.00
HtSinkTemp	Heatsink 1 temperature	269	0.00

Figure 122 Network, Meas configuration panel

Parameters

This submenu presents power network measurements, according to the network type. All available measurements are listed below, but which values actually appear depends on the network configuration.

Frequency	Displays the calculated frequency of the supply voltage of the power channel associated with this network.
Vline	Displays 1st phase supply line voltage.
Vline2	Displays 2nd phase supply line voltage.
Vline3	Displays 3rd phase supply line voltage.
I	Displays 1st phase load RMS current.
12	Displays 2nd phase load RMS current.
13	Displays 3rd phase load RMS current.
	The time base measurement is the main period in Phase Angle, and the modulation period in Burst Mode.
lavg	This displays the average current for all three phases; I _{RMS} Avg = (I _{RMS} + I _{RMS} 2 + I _{RMS} 3)/3
IsqBurst	Is the average square value of the load current (Isq) in burst firing. The average is taken over the duration of the burst period.This is typically used for monitoring and alarming over the burst period.
lsq	Square value of load current over the mains period in Burst and Phase Angle modes.
IsqMax	The maximum value out of I ² , I2 ² , I3 ² . Used in current limiting and alarm strategies.

IrmsMax	Displays the RMS value of I ² Max measured over the mains period. Typically used for current limiting or current transfer in 3 phase networks, in phase angle mode.
V1	Displays 1st phase load voltage (V _{RMS}).
V2	Displays 2nd phase load voltage (V _{RMS}).
V3	Displays 3rd phase load voltage (V _{RMS}).
	The time base measurement is the main period in phase angle, and the modulation period in burst mode.
Vavg	Displays the average voltage (V _{RMS}), for multi-phase systems.
VsqBurst	Average square value of load voltage in burst firing taken over the duration of the burst period. Typically used for monitoring and alarm strategies over the burst period.
Vsq	Square value of load voltage over the mains period in Burst and Phase Angle modes. Typically used for V ² control.
VsqMax	Displays the maximum value out of V1 ² , V2 ² , V3 ² . Used in current limiting and alarm strategies.
VrmsMax	The RMS value of V ² maximum over the mains period. Used for voltage limiting or voltage transfer.
P Burst	Measurement of true power on the network. This is calculated over the modulation period in Burst Firing mode. Typically used for monitoring and alarm strategy.
Р	True power measurement over the mains period in Burst and Phase Angle modes. Typically used for true power control.
S	Apparent power measurement. For phase angle firing S=Vline x I _{RMS} ; for burst firing S=V _{RMS} x I _{RMS}
PF	Calculation of power factor. Defined as Power Factor = True Power / Apparent Power. In phase angle this is PF=P/S; in burst firing PF = PBurst/S = Coso(Load)
Z	Displays 1st phase load impedance.
Z2	Displays 2nd phase load impedance.
Z3	Displays 3rd phase load impedance.
	Defined as: Z=V _{rms} /I _{rms} . Measurement uses line current and load voltage.
HSink Temp	Reserved for future development.

Network Setup configuration

This displays the setup of the network and associated functions.

	Name	Description	Address	Value Wired From	2 Stack16A (0)
	NetType	The type of network. Set in Ir	295	3PH (0) *	Stack25A (1)
+	VMaximum	Maximum Voltage of the stac	305	500V (0) -	Stack32A (2)
+	VlineNominal	Line nominal value	293	230.00	
+	IMaximum	Maximum Current of the stack	297	Stack16A (0) +	Stack40A (3)
*	INominal	Nominal current of the stack	296	16.00	Stack50A (4)
	HeatsinkTmax	Maximum temperature of the	284	125	Stack63A (5)
۶	VdipsThreshold	Voltage Dips Threshold	285	20	
+	FreqDriftThreshold	Frequency Drift Threshold.	304	5.00	Stack80A (6)
+	ChopOffThreshold	Chop Off Threshold	307	120	Stack100A (7)
+	ChopOffNb	Chop Off Number	308	10	Stack125A (8)
+	OverVoltThreshold	Over voltage threshold	286	10	
+	UnderVoltThreshold	Under voltage threshold	287	25	2
	HeatsinkPreTemp	Heatsink pre alarm temperatu	288	100	
+	RIC	Real Impedance Calculation	302	On (1) 💌	
1	PLFAdjustReg	Partial load failure adjustment	294	No (0) *	
-	PLFAdjusted	Partial load failure adjusted a	289	NotAdjusted (0) *	
۶	PLFSensitivity	Partial load failure sensitivity	290	2	5 No (0)
	Zref	PLF reference load impedance	300	0.00	6 Request (7)
	Zref2	PLF reference load impedance	310	0.00	o nequest (r)
	Zref3	PLF reference load impedance	311	0.00	
+	OverlThreshold	Over Current Threshold	291	120	
+	HeaterType	Heater type of the load	292	Resistive (0) *	14
	PLUthreshold	Partial load unbalance thresh	309	20	B Resistive (0)

Figure 123 Network setup menu page

Parameters

NetType	The type of network to which the unit can be connected. This is set at the factory and cannot be changed.
VMaximum	Indicates the maximum voltage (physical rating) of the stack (500V).
Vline Nominal	Line voltage nominal value (Line to line for all listed configurations, except Star with Neutral (4S) which is Line to Neutral), see Load Configurations (page 50).
IMaximum	Indicates the maximum current of the stack (16A, 25A, 40A, 63A, 100A, 125A). Further values are reserved for future development.
INominal	Nominal current supplied to the load (limited by IMaximum).
Heatsink Tmax	Reserved for future development.
VdipsThreshold	Voltage dips threshold. This is a percentage difference (relative to Vline Nominal) between two consecutive half cycles. Each half cycle voltage measurement is integrated and at the end of each half cycle the last two voltage integrals are compared.
FreqDriftThold	The supply frequency is checked every half cycle, and if the percentage change between 1/2 cycles exceeds this threshold value, a Mains Frequency System Alarm is generated. The threshold may be set to a maximum of 5% to cater for the effects of heavily inductive networks.
ChopOffThreshold	The 'Chop-off' alarm becomes active if load current exceeds this threshold for more than a pre-defined number of mains periods (Number Chop Off parameter). Threshold values lie between 100% and 350% of the unit's nominal current (INominal).
NumberChopOff	Definition of the number of mains periods in which Chop Off events can occur before a Chop Off alarm is enabled. Only used with Chop Off Threshold.
OverVoltThreshold	The threshold for detecting an over voltage condition as a percentage of VLineNominal. If Vline rises above the threshold an OverVolt alarm is set.

UnderVoltThreshold	This is the threshold for detecting an under voltage condition as a percentage of VLineNominal. If Vline falls below the threshold an UnderVolt alarm is set
Heatsink PreTemp	Reserved for future development.
RIC	Real impedance calculation option, configurable as On or Off, defines which method is used for the calculation of Z, Z2 and Z3, for the following load couplings; 3S (star without neutral) and 3D (closed delta). RIC Off:Z = V_{RMS} / I_{RMS} , Z2 = $V_{RMS}2 / I_{RMS}2$, Z3 = $V_{RMS}3 / I_{RMS}3$ RIC On: Z, Z2 and Z3 values automatically calculated us-
	ing RIC algorithm.
Note: Partial Load Failu	re (PLF) behavior depends on the RIC method used.
PLFAdjustReq	Partial load failure adjustment request. To make the Partial Load Failure (PLF) alarm operate correctly, the normal steady-state condition must be known to the instrument. This is done by activating the PLF Adjust Req once the controlled process has achieved a steady state condition. This causes a load impedance measurement to be made which is used as a reference for detecting a partial load failure. If the load impedance measurement is successful PLFAdjusted (below) is set. The measurement cannot be made if the load voltage (V) is below 30% of (VNominal) or the current (I) is below 30% of (INominal). The PLF alarm becomes active as setup in 'PLF Sensitivity', below.
PLFAdjusted	Partial load failure adjusted acknowledge. Indicates that the user requested a PLF adjustment and that the adjustment was successful.
PLFSensitivity	Partial load failure sensitivity. This defines how sensitive the partial load failure detection is to be as the ratio between the load impedance for a PLFadjusted load and the current impedance measurement. For example for a load of N parallel, identical elements, if the PLF Sensitivity (s) is set to 2, then a PLF alarm will occur if N/2, or more elements are broken (i.e. open circuit). If PLF Sensitivity is set to 3, then a PLF alarm occurs if N/3 or more elements are broken. If (N/s) is non-integer, then the sensitivity is rounded up. E.G. if N = 6 and s= 4, then the alarm is triggered if 2 or more elements are broken.
Zref	Reference load impedance, as measured when PLF adjust is requested.
OverlThreshold	The threshold for detecting an over current condition as a percentage of INominal. If I is above the threshold a Mains Current Alarm occurs (DetoverCurrent).
HeaterType	Shows the type of heater used in the load as: 'Resistive', 'SWIR' (Short wave infra-red), 'CSi' (Silicon Carbide), 'MoSi2' (Molybdenum Disilicide).

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

- With SWIR Load, if a fast response time is required, or if IHC firing mode has been selected, select SWIR (Infrared) as Heater type.
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, select the product current rating greater than or equal to 125% of MAXIMUM current of the SWIR load WITHOUT taking in account the inrush current
- If SWIR is selected as Heater type, adjust the duration of the safety ramp (SafetyRamp), the cooling time of the load (SWIRLoadCoolingTime) and the value of SWIR Load Cooling Threshold, to limit the RMS load inrush current SWIR to less than 2.5 times the product current rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

PLUthreshold Partial load unbalance threshold. Defines the threshold for detecting a partial load unbalance condition. This is only applicable to a three phase system. This occurs when the difference between the maximum and minimum current of the three phase system exceeds the threshold as a percentage of Inominal. The alarm can be detected between 5 and 50%.

Network Alarms

	Name	Description	Address		Wired From
1	MissMains	System alarm: Missing Mains	309	Enable (0) 💌	
	ThyrSC	Process alarm: Thyristor Short Circuit	310	Enable (0) 💌	
	OverTemp	System alarm: Over Temperature	311	Enable (0) 🔹	
1	NetworkDips	Process alarm: Mains Voltage Dips	312	Enable (0) 💌	
,	FreqFault	System alarm: Frequency Fault	313	Enable (0) 💌	
2	ChopOff	Process alarm: Chop Off	320	Enable (0) 💌	
1	UnderVolt	Process alarm: Under Mains Voltage Fault	319	Enable (0) 🔹	
2	OverVolt	Process alarm: Over Mains Voltage Fault	316	Enable (0) ×	
1	TLF	Process alarm: Total Load Failure	314	Enable (0) 💌	
1	PLF	Process alarm: Partial Load Failure	315	Enable (0) 💌	
	PreTemp	Process alarm: Pre-Temperature	317	Enable (0)	
1	OverCurrent	Indication alarm: Over Current	318	Enable (0) 💌	
2	PLU	Process alarm: Partial Load Unbalance	321	Enable (0) -	

Figure 124 Network alarms page

AlmDis

This menu allows individual network block alarms (listed below) to be enabled/disabled.

Missing Mains Thyristor short circuit Over-temperature¹ Mains voltage (Network) dips PLU (Partial Load Unbalance) Mains frequency fault detected Chop Off Under voltage Over voltage Total load failure Partial load failure Pre-temperature¹ Over current

1.Reserved for future development

Network AlmDet Submenu

As for 'Alarm Disable', above, but this Alarm detect submenu indicates whether any of the network alarms has been detected and is currently active.

Network Almsig Submenu

These displays show whether an alarm has occurred and also contains latching information. The relevant AlarmSig parameter is used when wiring (to a relay for example). The alarm list is as given above.

Network Almlat Submenu

As for 'Alarm Disable', above, but this Alarm Latch submenu allows each individual network block alarm to be defined as latching or non-latching.

Network Almack Submenu

As for 'Alarm Disable', above, but this Alarm Acknowledge submenu allows each individual network block alarm to be acknowledged. Once acknowledged, the associated signaling parameter is cleared. Acknowledge parameters automatically clear after being written.

Note: Alarms may not be acknowledged whilst the trigger source is still active.

Network Almstop Submenu

Allows each individual alarm type to be configured to stop the related power module from firing. Activated by the related signaling parameter. The alarm list is as given above.

Network Almrelay Submenu

Allows each individual alarm to be selected to activate (or not) the relay.

Note: When utilizing Almrelay function, ensure FaultDet/CustomAlarm parameter remains wired to IO.Relay/PV.

Qcode

Quick code parameters are also settable when in Quickcode configuration mode.

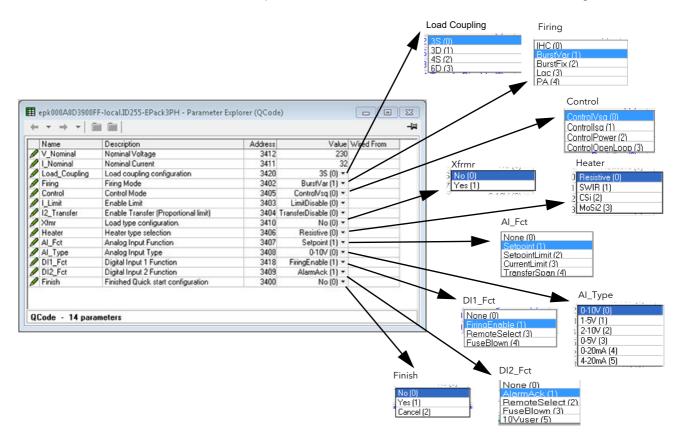


Figure 125 Quick code parameters

Parameters

V_Nominal	The nominal output voltage to be supplied.
I_Nominal	The nominal output current expected to be drawn.
Firing	Select firing mode from IHC (Intelligent Half Cycle), Burst firing (fixed or variable), Logic or Phase angle.
Load Coupling	For three phase systems only, this allows the user to select one of the following wiring configurations:
	3 Star (3S), 3 Delta (3D), 4 Star (4S) or 6 Delta (6D).
Control	Select 'Vsq' (V ²), 'Isq' (I ²), 'Power' or 'Open Loop' as the control mode.
I_Limit	This is used to Enable or disable threshold limit. (By default the current limit function is enabled).

Note: The current limiting function is not available with the firing mode; Intelligent Half Cycle (IHC).

=) (=)	
I2_Transfer	Enable or disable transfer (Proportional limit). This is only available if ordered.
XFmr	Select output as suitable for resistive loads (No) or for transformer primary loads (Yes).
Heater	Select Resistive, Short wave infra red (SWIR), Silicon carbide (CSi) or Molybdenum disilicide (MoSi2) as the heating element type.
AI_Fct	Select the Analog Input function as 'None', 'Setpoint' or 'Setpoint limit'.
AI_Type	Select the required Volt or mA range (as shown above) for the analog input.

DI1_Fct	Select the function of Digital Input 1 as 'None', 'Firing Enable', Alarm acknowledge ('AlarmAck'), Select remote setpoint ('RemoteSelect'), Fuse Blown ('Fuse Blown') or Setpoint.
DI2_Fct	Select the function of Digital Input 2 as; 'None', Alarm acknowledge ('AlarmAck'), Select remote setpoint ('RemoteSelect') or Fuse Blown ('FuseBlown), or Setpoint, providing Firing is set too 'Logic', and AI_Type is not set too 'Setpoint'), or a configurable User Input
Finish	('10Vuser'). Yes = quit quick code (after confirmation) and restart the unit with the new configuration; No = continue configuration editing; Cancel = ignore all changes and restart the unit with the previous (unedited) configuration.

The Setpoint provider supplies one local and two remote setpoints. It also allows users to manage a setpoint ramp, a setpoint limit (re-linearization) and the possibility to select between percentage and engineering for setpoint unit.

Name	Description	Address	Value	Wred	
SPSelect	Setpoint select	1498	Remote (1) -		
RemSelect	Remote setpoint selection	1508	Rem1 (0) 💌		
LocalSP	Local setpoint	1496	0.00		
Remote1	Remote setpoint 1	1502	0.00	IO.Ana	
Remote2	Remote setpoint 2	1509	0.00		
/ Limit	Setpoint limit scalar	1503	100.00		
WorkingSP	Working or active setpoint	1497	0.00		
RampRate	Ramp rate for the setpoint.	1499	Off (0) 💌		
/ DisRamp	External input for enabling or disablir	1500	No (0) 💌		
RateDone	Indicates whether the ramp is compl	1501	Yes (1) 💌		Percent
SPTrack	Enable Setpoint tracking	1504	No (0) 💌		🗩i Percent (0)
SPUnits	units of the setpoint	1506	Percent (0) ·		Eng (1)
HiRange	High range of a setpoint	1505	100.00		
EngWorkingSP	Working Setpoint when in engineeria	1507	0.00		
SPOpAccess	Enable operator access to SP	1510	Yes (1) 💌		

Figure 126 SetProv configuration page

Setpoint provider parameters

SPSelect	Allows the user to select between Remote or Local as the setpoint source.
RemSelect	Select Remote1 or Remote2 as the remote setpoint.
LocalSP	Allows entry of a setpoint value to be used when SPSelect (above) is set to 'Local'.
Remote1	The Remote setpoint value (normally wired from an analog input) for use when SPSelect = Remote and RemSelect = Remote1.
Remote2	The Remote setpoint value (normally wired from an analog input) for use when SPSelect = Remote and RemSelect = Remote2.
Limit	Allows the working setpoint to be scaled such that 'scaled working SP' = (working SP x limit)/100. Thus, when limit = 100, the setpoint is unscaled.
WorkingSP	The active value being provided as a setpoint output. This might be the current target setpoint or the rate-limited target setpoint.
RampRate	This applies a rate limit to the working setpoint, until the target setpoint has been achieved. The 'RateDone' parameter (below) is set to 'No' for the duration of the rate limiting, then set to 'Yes' when rate limiting is complete.
DisRamp	This is an external control used to enable/disable ramp rate limiting and to write the target setpoint directly to the working setpoint. The 'RateDone' parameter (below) is set to 'Yes' when DisRamp is 'Yes'.
RateDone	Set to 'No' if ramp rate limiting (above) is in operation. Otherwise set to 'Yes'.
SPTrack	If enabled ('Yes') the local setpoint tracks the remote setpoints, so that if the setpoint is subsequently set to 'Local', the local setpoint will be the same as the last known value of the remote setpoint, thus helping to ensure a bumpless transfer.

SPOpAccess	The SetPoint operational access parameter is used to allow or hide access to a local setpoint.
	Yes (1) = Enables access. No (0) = Disables (hides) access.
	Setpoint remains adjustable from a remote input whatever value of this parameter
SPUnits	Allows the user to select % or 'Eng' (Engineering units) as Setpoint units. If 'Eng' is selected, 'HiRange' and 'Eng workingSP' appear at the user interface.
HiRange	Appears only if SP units set to 'Eng'. This value is the high range of the setpoint used to scale the setpoint into % of High Range.
EngWorkingSP	Appears only if SP units set to 'Eng'. This value is an indication of the working setpoint in Engineering units. The parameter must not be used for control because control loops accept setpoints only as % values.

Timer Configuration

1	2 3 4					
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From	
I	Туре	Type of Timer	2330	🔲 nPulse (1) 💌		
0	Time	Time	2328	0		
	ElapsedTime	Elapsed Time	2326	0		
0	In	Trigger/Gate input	2331	Off (0) 💌		
	Out	Output	2327	Off (0) 💌		
	Triggered	Triggered Flag	2329	Off (0) 💌		

Figure 127 iTools Timer configuration

Parameters

	to select the required timer type as follows: Timer is off
On Pulse	The timer output switches on when 'In' changes from Off to On, and it remains on until the time period ('Time' - see below) has elapsed. If the input is re-triggered before 'Time' has elapsed, the timer re-starts. 'Triggered' (below) follows the state of the output.
On delay	After the input changes from Off to On, the timer output remains off until the time period defined in 'Time' (below) has elapsed. Once this period has elapsed, if the input is still on, the output switches on and remains on until the input goes Off. Elapsed time is set to zero when the input goes off.
One Shot	'Triggered' follows the state of the input. If the input is On, then as soon as a value is entered into the 'Time' parameter (below) the output goes on, and remains on until the Time period has elapsed, or the input goes off. If the input is off, the output is set off and the time countdown is inhibited until input goes on again. 'Triggered' goes On as soon as the time value is edited, and remains on until the output goes Off.
Min On	The Time value may be edited whilst active. Once the time period has elapsed, the Time value must be re-edited in order to re-start the timer. The output remains 'On' as long as the Input is on, plus the 'Time' period (below). If the input returns to the on state before the time period has elapsed, the elapsed time is reset to zero, so that the full time period is added to the On period when the input switches off again. 'Triggered' is On whilst the elapsed time is greater than zero.
the value displa but as the input to Hrs:Mins. (Hc which the value	to set a time period for use as described in 'Type' above. Initially, yed under iTools is in the form Minutes:seconds.10ths of seconds, value increases the format changes first to Hours:Mins:Secs, then olding the up arrow key continuously operated causes the speed at increments to increase. Minimum entry is 0.1 seconds; maximum is
	ch of the time period has passed so far.
The timer trigge described abov	er input. The function of this input varies according to timer type, as e.
Shows the time Function depen	r on/off status. Ids on timer type, as described above.
	Off On Pulse On delay One Shot One Shot Min On Allows the user the value displa but as the input to Hrs:Mins. (Ho which the value 500 hours. Shows how much The timer trigged described abov Shows the time

Timer examples

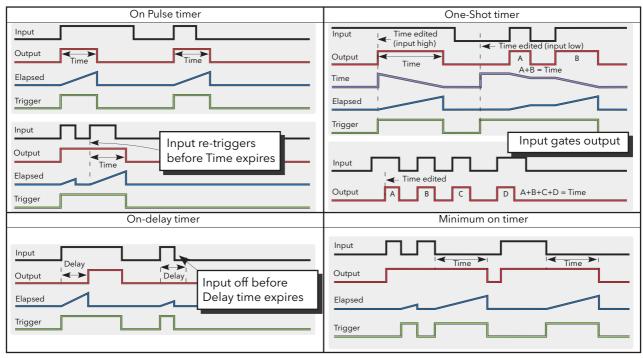


Figure 128 shows some timing examples for the different types of timer available.

Figure 128 Timer examples

The totalizer is an instrument function used to calculate a total quantity by integrating a flow rate input over time. The maximum value of the totalizer is +/- 9,999,999,999. The outputs from a totalizer are its integrated value, and an alarm state.

	2	1 2 3 4					
	Name	Description	Address	Value	Wired From		
	TotalOut	Totalised Output	2395	0.00			
1	In	Input Value	2399	0.00			
1	Units	Units	2397	None (0) 💌			
1	Resolution	Resolution	2398	X (0) 🝷			
1	AlarmSP	Alarm Setpoint	2394	0.00			
	AlarmOut	Alarm Output	2396	Off (0) 💌			
1	Run	Run	2400	No (0) 💌			
1	Hold	Hold	2401	No (0) 💌			
1	Reset	Reset	2402	No (0) 🔻			
_							
/	Run Hold	Run Hold	2400 2401	No (0) 💌 No (0) 💌			

Figure 129 iTools Totalizer page

Parameters

Total Out	The integrated total between -9,999,999,999 and +9,999,999,999
ln	The parameter to be totalized.
Units	Units of the totalized measurement.
Resolution	Set the number of decimal places for the totalizer value.
AlarmSP	Totalizer alarm setpoint. This threshold is applied to the totalized measurement. When totalizing positive values, a positive AlarmSP value must be entered; the totalizer alarm being triggered when the totalizer value reaches or exceeds AlarmSP. When totalizing negative values, a negative value must be entered; the totalizer alarm being triggered when the totalizer value reaches or goes more negative than AlarmSP. If set to zero, the alarm is disabled.
AlarmOut	The on/off status of the totalizer alarm.
Run	Yes initiates integration; No inhibits integration.
Hold	Yes suspends integration; No restarts integration.
Reset	Yes resets the totalizer value to zero and resets the totalizer alarm.

User Value Configuration Menu

This provides storage for up to four user-defined constants. Typical uses are as a sources for maths functions, or as storage for values written over the communications link.

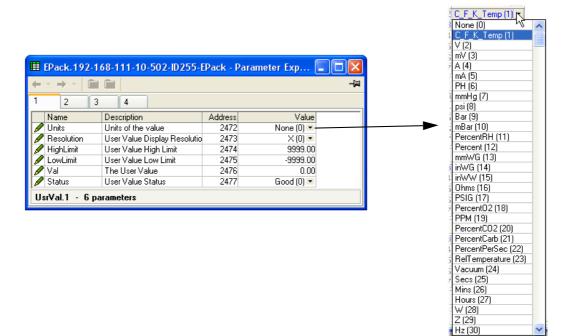


Figure 130 Top level UseVal page

User Value parameters

Units	Allows the selection of User Value units.
Resolution	Set the number of decimal places for the User Value.
High/Low Limit	Allows the user to set limits to help prevent the User Value from being set out-of-bounds.
Value	Allows the user to enter a value, or the value if wired to a suitable parameter.
Status	If this parameter is wired, it can be used to force a Good or Bad status onto the User Value for test purposes (e.g. fallback strategy).
	If not wired, it reflects the status of the Value input if this input is wired.

Using iTools

iTools software running on a PC allows quick and easy access to the configuration of the unit. The parameters used are the same as those described in "Configuration using iTools" on page 141, with the addition of various diagnostic parameters.

iTools also gives the user the ability to create software wiring between function blocks, something that is not possible from the operator interface. Such wiring is carried out using the Graphical wiring Editor feature.

In addition to the guidance given here, there are two on-line Help systems available within iTools: Parameter help and iTools help. Parameter help is accessed by clicking on 'Help' in the toolbar (opens the complete parameter help system), by right-clicking on a parameter and selecting 'Parameter Help' from the resulting context menu, or by clicking on the Help menu and selecting 'Device Help'. iTools help is accessed by clicking on the Help menu, and selecting 'Contents'. iTools help is also available in manual format under part number HA028838, either as a physical manual or as a PDF file.



Figure 131 Help access

iTools connection

Automatic detection

The following descriptions assume that the latest version iTools software as been correctly installed on the PC.

For EPack units only (at time of publication), if the desktop/laptop and EPack are IP compatible (same subnet mask) then Plug & Play allows easy connection as follows.

- 1. Set correct IP mode and or IP address to the instrument and PC.
- 2. Launch iTools, click on the button 'Add' a popup window appears showing you all EPack instruments on the network.
- 3. Double click on one or more units to add them to iTools.

Note: 'Eurotherm discovery' mechanism is based on 'Zero Configuration Networking' which is generic name used to group protocols together in order to create communication networks automatically (Plug & Play).

Alternatively, if there is a mix of EPack and other instruments on the network, the following procedure can be used.

Ethernet (Modbus TCP) communications

Note: The following description is given as an example. Images could be different depending on the version of Windows being used.

It is first necessary to determine the IP address of the unit, as described in "Communications Configuration" on page 145. This can be done from either the Config or Quickcode menu.

Once the Ethernet link has been correctly installed, carry out the following actions at the PC:

- 1. Click on 'Start'
- 2. Click on 'Control Panel'. (If Control Panel opens in 'Category View' select 'Classic View' instead.)
- 3. Double-click on 'iTools'.
- 4. Click on the TCP/IP tab in the Registry settings configuration.
- 5. Click on Add... The 'New TCP/IP Port' dialog box opens.
- 6. Type-in a name for the port, then click Add...
- 7. Type the IP address of the unit in the 'Edit Host' box which appears. Click OK.
- 8. Check the details in the 'New TCP/IP Port' box, then click on 'OK'.
- 9. Click on 'OK' in the 'Registry settings' box to confirm the new port.

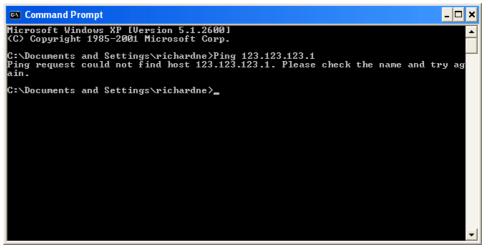
R	egistry Settings - i	Tools Configuration			×	
ſ	Product Key Serial Po	orts TCP/IP Authorizatio	n OPC Server	r Startup	_	
	Configure TCP/IP	ports for MODBUS ove	r Ethernet			
	Settings may be overri	dden by an Address Space	File. See OPC	Server Startup tab.		
	Enabled Cor	New ICP/IP PUIL				
	🗹 EPack MOI	<u>N</u> ame:			, I▼ Enable <u>d</u>	
		Connection Type:	MODBUS TO	•		
		<u>T</u> imeout:	1500	ms		
		<u>H</u> ost List: Host Name/IP Addre	\$\$	Edit Host		×
	Add R			<u>H</u> ost Name/Address:		
	N			<u>P</u> ort:	502	
	¥ ¹] 	emove	Block Read:	125 Registers (default = 125)	
					(applies to MODBUS TCP only)	
					✓ Ping Host Before Connecting	
					OK Cancel	

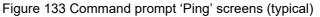
Figure 132 Adding a new Ethernet port

To check that the PC can now communicate with the instrument, Click 'Start', 'All Programs', 'Accessories', 'Command Prompt', when the Command Prompt box appears, type in : Ping<Space>IP1.IP2.IP3.IP4<Enter> (where IP1 to IP4 are the IP address of the instrument).

If the Ethernet link to the instrument is operating correctly, the 'successful' reply arrives. Otherwise, the 'Ping request could not find host' reply arrives, in which case, the Ethernet link, IP address, and PC port details should be verified.

🖾 Command Prompt	- 🗆 🗙
1icrosoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600] (C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.	^
C:\Documents and Settings\richardne>Ping 123.123.1	
Pinging 123.456.789.0with 32 bytes of data:	
Reply from 123.123.123.1: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=64 Reply from 123.123.123.1: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=64 Reply from 123.123.123.1: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=64 Reply from 123.123.123.1: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=64	
Ping statistics for 123.123.123.1: Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 1ms, Average = 0ms	
C:\Documents and Settings\richardne>	





Another way to check connection is to use OPC server to perform verification.

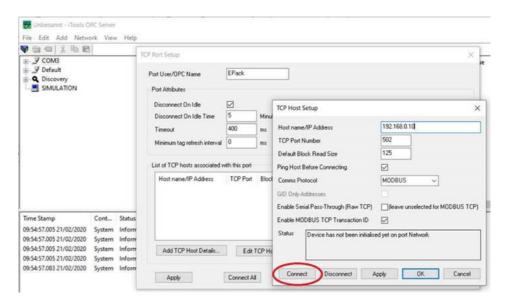


Figure 134 Ethernet Connection Checking using OPC Server

After adding the port details, test the connection by pressing 'Connect. The status should be "Device is functioning correctly".

Graphical Wiring Editor Graphical Wiring

Note: The Graphical Wiring Editor is a chargeable option, and the toolbar icon appears only if the option has been purchased and is enabled.

Clicking on the Graphical Wiring Editor (GWE) toolbar icon causes the Graphical wiring window for the current instrument configuration to open. Initially, this reflects the preset factory default block wiring.

😵 iTools
File Device Wiring View Options Window Help
Image: Second
🚯 Graphical Wiring 🖽 Parameter Explorer 🚯 Fieldbus I/O Gateway 🌄 Watch/Recipe 🙀 OPC Scope 🕬 iTools Secure
Perack.192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack EPack.192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack - Graphical Wiring
▶ 100% ▼ 🕀 🖾 × 2 2 兆 階 💼 増 坪 🔞 🔝 11 wires used, 69 free + 🖗
Top Top Comment Meas.P Meas.P Meas.P SPSelect WorkingSP = 0.00 SPSelect WorkingSP = 0.00 SPSelect WorkingSP Remote RateDone DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp DisRamp Disr

Figure 135 Graphical wiring Editor

The graphical wiring editor allows:

- 1. Function blocks, notes, comments etc. to be 'dragged and dropped' into the wiring diagram from the tree list (left pane).
- 2. Parameters to be wired to one another by clicking on the output, the clicking on the required input.
- 3. Viewing and/or editing of parameter values by right-clicking on a function block and selecting 'Function Block View'.
- 4. The user to select parameter lists and to switch between parameter and wiring editors.
- 5. Completed wiring to be downloaded to the instrument (function blocks and wiring items with dashed outlines are new, or have been edited since the last download).

...

loolbar	
💙 🔳 😽 🖑 100%	 🗿 🏦 거는 🔀 🔀 14 wires used, 66 free 📲

V	Download wiring to Instrument.
61	Mouse Select. Select normal mouse operation. Mutually exclusive with 'Pan', below.
\bigcirc	Mouse Pan. When active, this causes the mouse cursor to become a hand-shaped icon. Allows the graphical wiring diagram to be click-dragged within the GWE window aperture.
100%	Zoom. Allows the magnification of the wiring diagram to be edited.
+	Pan tool. Whilst left-clicked, the cursor appears as a rectangle, representing the position of GWE window aperture over the whole wiring diagram. Click-dragging allows this aperture to be moved freely about the diagram. Rectangle size depends on Zoom (magnification) factor.
	Show/Hide grid. This icon toggles a background alignment grid on and off.
2 2	Undo, Redo. Allows the user to undo the last action, or once an undo action has taken place, to undo the undo. Short cuts are <ctrl>+<z> for undo; <ctrl>+<r> for re-do.</r></ctrl></z></ctrl>
<u>% 🖻 🛍</u>	Cut, Copy, Paste. Normal Cut (copy and delete), Copy (copy without delete) and Paste (insert into) functions. Short cuts are <ctrl>+<x> for cut; <ctrl>+<c> for copy and <ctrl>+<v> for Paste.</v></ctrl></c></ctrl></x></ctrl>
붭 완	Copy diagram fragment; Paste diagram fragment. Allows a part of the wiring diagram to be selected, named and saved to file. The fragment may then be pasted into any wiring diagram, including the source diagram.
2	Create compound; Flatten compound. These two icons allow compounds to be created and 'uncreated' respectively.

Wiring Editor Operating Details

Component Selection

Single wires are shown with boxes at 'corners' when selected. When more than one wire is selected, as part of a group, the wire color changes to magenta. All other items have a dashed line drawn round them when selected.

Clicking on a single item selects it. An Item can be added to the selection by holding down the control key (Ctrl) whilst clicking on the item. (A selected item can be deselected in the same way.) If a block is selected, then all its associated wires are also selected.

Alternatively, the mouse can be click-dragged on the background to create a 'rubber band' round the relevant area; anything within this area being selected when the mouse is released.

<Ctrl>+<A> selects all items on the active diagram.

Block Execution Order

The order in which the blocks are executed by the instrument depends on the way in which they are wired. The order is automatically worked out so that the blocks use the most recent data. Each block displays its place in its sequence in a colored square in the bottom left-hand corner (Figure 136).

Function Blocks

A Function Block is an algorithm which may be wired to and from other function blocks to make a control strategy. Each function block has inputs and outputs. Any parameter may be wired **from**, but only parameters that are alterable in Operator Mode may be wired **to**. A function block includes any parameters that are needed to configure or operate the algorithm. The inputs and outputs which are considered to be of most use are always shown. In most cases all of these need to be wired before the block can perform a useful task.

If a function block is not faded in the tree (left hand pane) it can be dragged onto the diagram. The block can be dragged around the diagram using the mouse.

A Maths block is shown below as an example. When block type information is alterable (as in this case) click on the box with the down arrow in it to display a dialog box allowing the value to be edited.

If it is required to wire from a parameter, which is not shown as a recommended output, click on the 'Click to Select Output' icon in the bottom right hand corner to display a full list of parameters in the block (Figure 138, below). Click on one of these to start a wire.

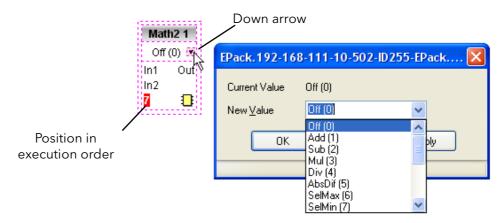


Figure 136 Function block example

Function Block Context Menu

Right-click in the function block to display the context menu.

Function	Displays a list of parameters associated	
block View	with the function block. 'Hidden'	🖽 Func
	parameters can be displayed by de-selecting 'Hide Parameters and Lists when not Relevant' in the Options menu 'Parameter availability Settings…' item.	Re-Ro Re-Ro Re-Ro Show

E Function Block View					
	Re-Route Wires				
	Re-Route Input Wires				
	Re-Route Output Wires				
	Show Wires Using Tags				
	Hide Unwired Connections				
K Cut Ctrl+>					
e <mark>ð</mark>	Сору	Ctrl+C			
e	Paste	Ctrl+V			
×	Delete	Del			
	Undelete				
	Bring To Front				
	Push To Back				
	Edit Parameter Valu	Je			
	Parameter Properti	es			
2	Parameter Help				

Figure 137 Function block context menu

Re-Route wires Re-Route Input wires Re-Route Outg	Redraws all wiring associated with the function block. Redraws all Input wiring associated with the function block.
Ne-Noule Oul	Redraws all Output wiring associated
	with the function block.
Show Wires Us	
	Wires are not drawn, but their Start and
	End destinations are indicated by tags
	instead. Reduces wire 'clutter' in
	diagrams, where source and destination
	are widely separated.
	Math2 1 Off (0) ▼ In1 Out Math2 1.out PV TU TU

Hide Unwired Connections

Displays only those parameters which are wired.

Cut Allows one or more selected items to be moved to the Clipboard ready for pasting into another diagram or compound, or for use in a Watch window, or OPC scope. The original items are grayed out, and function blocks and wires are shown dashed until next download, after which they are removed from the diagram. Short cut = <Ctrl>+<X>. Cut operations carried out since the last download can be 'undone' by using the 'Undo' toolbar icon, by selecting 'Undelete' or by using the short cut <Ctrl>+<Z>.

- Copy Allows one or more selected items to be copied to the Clipboard ready for pasting into another diagram or compound, or for use in a Watch window, or OPC scope. The original items remain in the current wiring diagram. Short cut = <Ctrl>+<C>. If items are pasted to the same diagram from which they were copied, the items will be replicated with different block instances. Should this result in more instances of a block than are available, a message appears showing details of which items couldn't be copied.
- Paste Copies items from the Clipboard to the current wiring diagram. <Ctrl>+<V>. If items are pasted to the same diagram from which they were copied, the items will be replicated with different block instances. Should this result in more instances of a block than are available, a Paste message log display appears showing details of which items couldn't be copied.

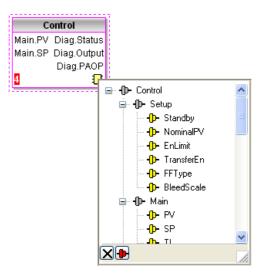
P	Paste				
		Save Print No Details			
	Message Log:				
	Status	Description			
	Information Information Error Information Error Information Error Information Error Information	Paste Paste Block Counter There aren't enough Counter blocks Paste Block Counter There aren't enough Counter blocks Paste Block UsrVal There aren't enough UsrVal blocks Paste Block UsrVal There aren't enough UsrVal blocks Finished			
	[
	<u>Auto close on successful completion</u> Close				

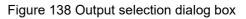
Delete	Marks all selected items for deletion. Such items are shown dashed until next download, after which they are removed from the diagram. Short cut = .		
Undelete	Reverses 'Delete' and 'Cut' operations carried out on selected item(s) since the last download.		
Bring To Front	Brings selected items to the front of the diagram.		
Push To back	Sends the selected items to the back of the diagram.		
Edit Parameter Value			
	This menu item is active if the cursor is hovering over an editable parameter. Selecting this menu item causes a pop-up window to appear, which allows the user to edit the parameter value.		
Parameter Prop	perties		
	This menu item is active if the cursor is hovering over an editable parameter. Selecting this menu item causes a pop-up window to appear, which allows the user to view the parameter properties, and also, to view the parameter Help (by clicking on the 'Help' tab.		
Parameter Help	Produces Parameter Properties and Help information for the selected function block or parameter, depending on the hover position of the cursor, when the right-click occurs.		

Wires

To make a wire

- 1. Drag two (or more) blocks onto the diagram from the function block tree.
- 2. Start a wire by either clicking on a recommended output or clicking on the 'Click to Select output' icon at the bottom right corner of the block to bring up the connection dialog, and clicking on the required parameter. Recommended connections are shown with a green plug symbol; other parameters which are available being shown in yellow. Clicking on the red button causes all parameters to be shown. To dismiss the connection dialog either press the escape key on the keyboard, or click the cross at the bottom left of the dialog box.
- 3. Once the wire has started a dashed wire is drawn from the output to the current mouse position. To complete the wire click on the required destination parameter.
- 4. Wires remain dashed until they are downloaded





Routing Wires

When a wire is placed it is auto-routed. The auto routing algorithm searches for a clear path between the two blocks. A wire can be auto-routed again using the context menus or by double clicking the wire. A wire segment can be edited manually by click-dragging. If the block to which it is connected is moved, the end of the wire moves with it, retaining as much of the path as possible.

If a wire is selected by clicking on it, it is drawn with small boxes on its corners.

Right click on a wire to display the wire block context

Wire Context Menu

menu:	
Force Exec Break	When wires form a loop, a break point must be introduced, where the value written to the block comes from a source which was last executed during the previous cycle. A break is automatically placed by iTools, and appears in red. > Force Exec Break allows the user to define where a break must be placed. Surplus breaks appear in black.
Re-Route wire	Replaces the current wire route with a new route generated from scratch.
Use Tags	Toggles between wire and tag mode between parameters. Tag mode is useful for sources and destinations which are widely separated.
Find Start	Goes to the source of the wire.
Find End	Goes to the destination of the wire.
Cut, Copy, Paste	Not used in this context.
Delete	Marks the wire for deletion. The wire is redrawn as a dashed line (or dashed tags) until next download. Operation can be reversed until after next download.
Undelete	Reverses the effect of the Delete operation up until the next download, after which, Undelete is disabled.
Bring to Front	Brings the wire to the front of the diagram.
Push to Back	Sends the wire to the back of the diagram.



Figure 139 Wire context menu

Wire Colors

Black	Normal functioning wire
Red	The wire is connected to a non-changeable parameter. Values are rejected by the destination block.
Magenta	A normal functioning wire is being hovered-over by the mouse cursor.
Purple	A red wire is being hovered-over by the mouse cursor.
Green	New Wire (dashed green wire changes to solid black after being downloaded.)

Thick Wires

When attempting to wire between blocks which are located in different tasks, if no task break is inserted, then all the affected wires are highlighted by being drawn with a much thicker line than usual. Thick wires still execute, but the results are unpredictable, as the unit cannot resolve the strategy.

Comments

Comments are added to a wiring diagram by click-dragging them from the Function Block tree onto the diagram. As soon as the mouse is released, a dialog box opens to allow comment text to be entered.

Carriage returns are used to control the width of the comment. Once text entry is complete, 'OK' causes the comment to appear on the diagram. There are no restrictions on the size of a comment. Comments are saved to the instrument along with the diagram layout information.

Comments can be linked to function blocks and wires by clicking on the chain icon at the bottom right-hand corner of the comment box and then clicking again on the required block or wire. A dashed line is drawn to the top of the block or to the selected wire segment (Figure 141).

Note: Once the comment has been linked, the Chain icon disappears. It re-appears when the mouse cursor is hovered over the bottom right-hand corner of the comment box, see Figure 141.

Comment Context Menu

•••••••••••		
Edit	Opens the Comment dialog box to allow the comment text to be edited.	
Unlink	Deletes the current link from the comment.	
Cut	Moves the comment to the Clipboard, ready to be pasted elsewhere. Short cut = <ctrl>+<x>.</x></ctrl>	
Сору	Copies the comment from the wiring diagram to the Clipboard, ready to be pasted elsewhere. Short cut = <ctrl>+<c>.</c></ctrl>	Fi
Paste	Copies a comment from the Clipboard to the wiring diagram. Short cut = <ctrl>+<v>.</v></ctrl>	
Delete	Marks the comment for deletion at next download.	
Undelete	Undoes the Delete command if download has not taken place since.	



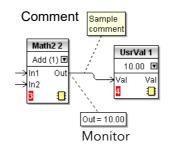
Figure 140 Comment context menu

Monitors

Monitor points are added to a wiring diagram by click-dragging them from the Function Block tree onto the diagram. A monitor shows the current value (updated at the iTools parameter list update rate) of the parameter to which it is linked. By default the name of the parameter is shown. To hide the parameter name either double click on the monitor box or 'Show Names' in the context (right-click) menu can be used to toggle the parameter name on and off.

Monitors are linked to function blocks and wires by clicking on the chain icon at the bottom right-hand corner of the box and then clicking again on the required parameter. A dashed line is drawn to the top of the block or the selected wire segment.

Note: Once the monitor has been linked, the Chain icon disappears. It re-appears when the mouse cursor is hovered over the bottom right-hand corner of the monitor box



Monitor Context		3-			
Menu		÷,		Show Nam	06
Show names	Toggles parameter names on	-	•	Show Names	
	and off in the monitor box.			Unlink	
Unlink	Deletes the current link from the		Ж	Cut	Ctrl+X
	monitor.		Ð	Сору	Ctrl+C
Cut	Moves the monitor to the	(<u>r</u>	Paste	Ctrl+V
	Clipboard, ready to be pasted elsewhere. Short cut =	1	×.	Delete	Del
	<ctrl>+<x>.</x></ctrl>			Undelete	
Сору	Copies the monitor from the	-			
copy	wiring diagram to the			Bring To Fr	
	Clipboard, ready to be pasted			Push To Ba	ck
	elsewhere. Short cut =	🧝 Parameter Help		Help	
	<ctrl>+<c>.</c></ctrl>			•	
Paste	Copies a monitor from the	М	oni	Figure 142	
	Clipboard to the wiring	1010	0111		At monu
	diagram. Short cut =				
	<ctrl>+<v>.</v></ctrl>				
Delete	Marks the monitor for deletion				
1 I	at next download.				
Undelete	Undoes the Delete command if				
	download has not taken place since.				
Bring to Front	Moves the item to the 'top' layer				
bring to Front	of the diagram.				
Push to Back	Moves the item to the 'bottom'				
	layer of the diagram.				
Parameter Help	Shows parameter help for the				
	item.				

Figure 141 Comment and Monitor appearance

Downloading 📎

When the wiring editor is opened the current wiring and diagram layout is read from the instrument. No changes are made to the instrument function block execution or wiring until the download button is pressed. Any changes made using the operator interface after the editor is opened are lost on download.

When a block is dropped onto the diagram, instrument parameters are changed to make the parameters for that block available. If changes are made and the editor is closed without saving them there is a delay while the editor clears these parameters.

During download, the wiring is written to the instrument which then calculates the block execution order and starts executing the blocks. The diagram layout including comments and monitors is then written into instrument flash memory along with the current editor settings. When the editor is reopened, the diagram is shown positioned as it was when it was last downloaded.

Colors

Items on the diagram are colored as follows:

Red	Items which totally or partially obscure other items and items which are totally or partially obscured by other items. Wires that are connected to unalterable or non-available parameters. Execution breaks. Block execution orders for Task 1.
Blue	Non-available parameters in function blocks. Block execution orders for Task 4. Task breaks.
Green	Items added to the diagram since last download are shown as green dashed lines. Block execution orders for Task 2.
Magenta	All selected items, or any item over which the cursor is hovering.
Purple	Red wires when being hovered over by the mouse cursor.
Black	All items added to the diagram before the last download. Block execution orders for Task 3. Redundant execution breaks. Monitor and comment text.

Diagram Context Menu

	Active only when the right click occurs within the bounding	K Cut Ctrl+
	rectangle which appears when	Copy Ctrl+
	more than one item is selected.	🛱 Paste Ctrl+
	Moves the selection off the	Re-Route Wires
	diagram to the Clipboard.	Align Tops
	Short cut = $\langle Ctrl \rangle + \langle X \rangle$.	Align Lefts
Сору	As for 'Cut', but the selection is	Space Evenly
	copied, leaving the original on	· ·
	the diagram. Short cut =	🗙 Delete
	<ctrl>+<c>.</c></ctrl>	Undelete
Paste	Copies the contents of the	Select All
	Clipboard to the diagram.	
	Short cut = $\langle Ctr \rangle + \langle V \rangle$.	🔓 Create Compound
Re-Route wires	Reroutes all selected wires. If	Rename
	no wires are selected, all wires	Conu Cranhia
	are re-routed.	Copy Graphic
Align Tops	Aligns the tops of all blocks in	Save Graphic
0	the selected area.	Copy Fragment To File
Align Lefts	Aligns the left edges of all	Paste Fragment From File
0	blocks in the selected area.	Centre
Space Evenly	Spaces selected items such that	Figure 143 Diagram conte
, ,	their top left corners are	menu
	spaced evenly across the width	monta
	of the diagram. Click on the	
	item which is to be the left-most	
	item, then <ctrl>+<left click=""></left></ctrl>	
	the remaining items in the	
	order in which they are to	
	appear.	
Delete	Marks the item for deletion at	
Delete	next download time.	
	Can be 'Undeleted' up until	
	download occurs.	
Undelete	Reverses the action of 'Delete'	
onderete	on the selected item.	
Select All	Selects all items on the current	
	diagram	
Create	diagram. Active only when the right click	
Create	Active only when the right click	
Create Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level	
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding	
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when	
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected.	
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram	
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound',	
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below.	the current wiring diagram
	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for	u
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant	tab.
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the v	tab. vhole diagram if no items a
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the w selected) to the clipboard as a Wir	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the w selected) to the clipboard as a Win pasting into a documentation app	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring
Compound	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the w selected) to the clipboard as a Wir	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring
Compound Rename Copy Graphic	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the v selected) to the clipboard as a Win pasting into a documentation app entering/leaving the selection (if a	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring ny) are drawn in tag mode
Compound Rename Copy Graphic	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the v selected) to the clipboard as a Win pasting into a documentation app entering/leaving the selection (if a As for 'Copy Graphic' above, but s	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring ny) are drawn in tag mode
Compound Rename Copy Graphic Save Graphic	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the v selected) to the clipboard as a Win pasting into a documentation app entering/leaving the selection (if a As for 'Copy Graphic' above, but s location instead of the clipboard.	tab. vhole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring ny) are drawn in tag mode
Compound Rename Copy Graphic	Active only when the right click occurs, in the top level diagram, within the bounding rectangle which appears when more than one item is selected. Creates a new wiring diagram as described in 'Compound', below. Allows a new name to entered for This name appears in the relevant Copies the selected items (or the v selected) to the clipboard as a Win pasting into a documentation app entering/leaving the selection (if a As for 'Copy Graphic' above, but s location instead of the clipboard.	tab. whole diagram if no items a ndows metafile, suitable fo lication. Wiring my) are drawn in tag mode waves to a user-specified fil

Paste Fragment From File

- Allows the user to select a stored fragment for inclusion in the wiring diagram.
- Centre Places the display window at the centre of the selected items. If 'Select All' has previously been clicked-on, then the display widow is placed over the centre of the diagram.

Compounds

Compounds are used to simplify the top level wiring diagram, by allowing the placing of any number of function blocks within one 'box', the inputs and outputs of which operate in the same way as those of a normal function block.

Each time a compound is created, a new tab appears at the top of the wiring diagram. Initially compounds and their tabs are named 'Compound 1', 'Compound 2', etc. but they can be renamed by right clicking either on the compound in the top level diagram, or anywhere within an open Compound, selecting 'Rename' and typing in the required text string (16 characters max.).

Compounds cannot contain other compounds (i.e. they can be created only in the top level diagram).

Compound creation

- 1. Empty compounds are created within the top level diagram by clicking on the 'Create Compound' toolbar icon.
- Compounds can also be created by highlighting one or more function blocks in the top level diagram and then clicking on the 'Create Compound' toolbar icon. The highlighted items are moved from the top level diagram into a new compound.



- 3. Compounds are 'uncreated' (flattened), by highlighting the relevant item in the top level menu and then clicking on the 'Flatten Compound' toolbar icon. All the items previously contained within the compound appear on the top level diagram.
- 4. Wiring between top level and compound parameters is carried out by clicking on the source parameter, then clicking on the compound (or the compound tab) and then clicking on the destination parameter. Wiring from a compound parameter to a top level parameter or from compound to compound is carried out in similar manner.
- 5. Unused function blocks can be moved into compounds by dragging from the tree view. Existing blocks can be dragged from the top level diagram, or from another compound, onto the tab associated with the destination compound. Blocks are moved out of compounds to the top level diagram or to another compound in a similar way. Function blocks can also be 'cut and pasted'.
- Default compound names (e.g. 'Compound 2') are used only once, so that if, for example, Compounds 1 and 2 have been created, and Compound 2 is subsequently deleted, then the next compound to be created will be named 'Compound 3'.
- 7. Top level elements can be click-dragged into compounds.

Tool Tips

Hovering the cursor over the block displays 'tooltips' describing that part of the block beneath the cursor. For function block parameters the tooltip shows the parameter description, its OPC name, and, if downloaded, its value. Similar tooltips are shown when hovering over inputs, outputs and over many other items on the iTools screen.

A Function Block is enabled by dragging the block onto the diagram, wiring it, and finally downloading it to the instrument. Initially blocks and associated wires are drawn with dashed lines, and when in this state the parameter list for the block is enabled but the block is not executed by the instrument.

The block is added to the instrument function block execution list when the 'Download' icon is operated and the items are redrawn using solid lines.

If a block which has been downloaded is deleted, it is shown on the diagram in a ghosted form until the download button is pressed. (This is because it and any wires to/from it are still being executed in the instrument. On download it will be removed from the instrument execution list and the diagram.) A ghosted block can be 'undeleted' as described in 'Context menu', above.

When a dashed block is deleted it is removed immediately.

Parameter Explorer

This view is displayed:

- 1. by clicking on the 'Parameter Explorer' toolbar icon, 🏢 Parameter Explorer
- 2. by double clicking on the relevant block in the tree pane or in the Graphical Wiring Editor
- 3. by selecting 'Function Block View' from the Function block context menu in the Graphical Wiring Editor.
- 4. by selecting 'parameter Explorer from the 'View' menu
- 5. by using the short cut <Alt>+<Enter>

In each case the function block parameters appear in the iTools window in tabular form, such as the example in Figure 144.

Graphical Wiring Image: Parameter Explorer Image: Fieldbus I/O Gateway Image: Watch/Recipe Image: OPC Scope Image: Tools Secure Image: Parameter Explorer Image: Paramet	iTools ile Device Explorer View Options Window	Help					
Pack. 192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack Pack. 192-168-101 Pack. 192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack Pack. 192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack Pack. 192-168-111-10 Pack. 192-168-111-10 Pack. 192-17 Pack. 192-168-111-10 Pack. 192-168-111-10 Pack. 192-17				<u> </u>		-	
Browse Find Name Description Address Value Network VineNormal Line nominal value 279 230.00 VineNormal Line unemotival value 279 230.00 VineNormal Line unemotival value 279 230.00 VineNormal Ine nominal value 279 230.00 VineNormal Ine nominal value 279 230.00 VineNormal Ine nominal value 279 230.00 VineNormal VineNormal VineNormal VineNormal VineNormal Ine shold 231 100 VolodType Load Voltage Dips Threshold 231 10 VolodType VolodType ineshold 231 10 ChopOlfThreshold 233 120 200	🗗 Graphical Wiring 🔠 Parameter Explorer 🚺	Fieldbus I/O Gateway	Watch/Recipe 🛛 👫	OPC Scope	ब्ब् iTools Secure		
Meas Setup AlmDis AlmDig AlmDig AlmSig AlmLat AlmAck AlmStop Instrument Instrument Image: Setup Maximum Value Value NetType The type of network. Set in It 201 1PH (1) • ID Image: Value Value Value Value Value Value VineNominal VineNominal Line nominal value 279 230.00 VineNominal VineNominal Value				5-EPack - P	arameter Ex (
Browse Find Name Description Address Value NetType The type of network. Set in Ii 281 1PH (1) • 281 1PH (1) • 282 10 283 10 284 10 284 10 284 10 285 10 284 10 284 10 285 10 286 10 286 10 286 10 286 10 287 10 288 10 288 10 289 10 280 10 280 10 281 10 282 10 283 120 284 10 284 10 284 10 284 10 284 10 284 10 284 10 <				Aleal at AleaA	AlmStop		
NetType The type of network. Set in I 281 1PH (1) • Instrument VMaximum Maximum Valage of the stac. 291 500V (0) • ID VMaximum Maximum Current of the stac. 291 500V (0) • ID IMaximum Maximum Current of the stac. 283 Stack16A (0) • ILgc2 INominal Line nominal value 279 230.00 Math2 VLoadType Load Volage type for Compu. 292 VLoadType (0) • Math2 Volage type for Compu. 292 VLoadType 10 Math2 Volage type for Compu. 290 2.00 Modultr FreqDriftThreshid Voltage Dips Threshold 271 10 FreqDriftThreshid Voltage Dips Threshold 233 120 ChopOlfThreshid Voltage Dips Threshold 233 120 ChopOlfThreshid Voltage threshold 273 10 Math2 UnderVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 AlmDis UnderVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTern Heatsink pre alam temperature adjusted 275 NotAdjusted (0) • PLFAdjusted Partial load fail							
 Instrument Instrument IV Maximum Maximum Voltage of the stac IPMonitor IpMonitor Line nominal value Z79 Z30.00 Naximum Maximum Current of the stack Z83 Stack16A (0) * INominal Nominal current of the stack Z82 INominal Nominal current of the stack Z82 VLoadType Logd VLoadType LoadVoltage type for Compu. Z92 Z00 ChopOffThreshold Z93 Z00 ChopOffThreshold Z93 Z10 ChopOffThreshold Z93 Z10 ChopOffThreshold Z93 Z10 ChopOffThreshold Z110 UnderVoltThreshold Z110 UnderVoltThreshold Z12 UnderVoltThreshold Z13 Line type for Voltage threshold Z13 Line type fo	🔄 Browse 🔍 Find						
ID VineNominal Line nominal value 279 230.00 IPMonitor IMaximum Maximum Current of the stack 283 Stack16A (0) ▼ Lgc2 IMominal Nominal Current of the stack 282 16.00 Lgc3 VLoadType Load Voltage type for Compu. 292 VLoad_Type (0) ▼ HeatsinkTmax Maximum temperature of the 270 125 Modultr VispThreshold Voltage Dips Threshold 271 10 Network FreqDrift Threshc Chop Diff Threshold 290 2.00 ChopDiff Threshold Voltage Dips Threshold 233 120 ChopDiff Threshold Voltage Dips Threshold 273 10 DverVoltThresh Over voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre atam temperatu 274 100 PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjustment 280 No(0) ▼	🗊 🦳 Instrument						
 IPMonitor ILgc2 INominal Nominal current of the stack 283 Stack16A (0) • ILgc3 Usc6 Math2 Modultr Network Setup Setup Setup AlmDis AlmDis AlmDet AlmSig AlmLat IMaximum temperature adjustment 283 Stack16A (0) • INominal Nominal current of the stack 282 16.00 VLoadType Load Voltage type for Compu. 232 VLoad_Type0 (0) • HeatsinkTmax Maximum temperature of the 270 125 VdipsThreshold Voltage Dips Threshold 271 10 FreqDriftThresh Chop Off Threshold 233 120 ChopOffThresh Chop Off Threshold 272 10 UnderVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre atom temperature 380 No (0) • PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjustment 280 No (0) • 							
 Lgc2 INominal Nominal current of the stack 282 16.00 Ugc8 VLoadType LoadVoltage type for Compu. 292 VLoad_Type0 (0) * HeastinkTmax Maximum temperature of the 270 125 Wodultr Weas GrapDifThreshold Voltage Dips Threshold 271 10 FreqDriftThreshold Collage Dips Threshold 293 120 ChopOffThreshold Collage threshold 273 10 OverVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTen HeatsinkPreTen PreTen Pr							
 Lgc8 Math2 Modultr Network Setup AlmDis AlmDit DerViolThresh Urder voltage threshold Visit Preshold ChopOffThresh Chop Off Number Calif Control Threshold ChopOffThreshold ChopOffThreshold							
Imath 2 Heatsink Tmax Maximum temperature of the 270 125 Imath Modultr Vdips Threshold 271 10 Imath Mexork FreqDrift Threshold 230 2.00 Imath Meas ChopOlfT hreshold 233 120 Imath Maximum temperature of the 272 10 Imath Meas ChopOlfT hreshold 233 120 Imath Maximum temperature of the 272 10 10 Imath Maximum temperature of the 272 10 10 Imath Maximum temperature of the 273 15 15 Imath Maximum temperature of the eating threating threa							
Modultr VdipsThreshold Voltage DipsThreshold 271 10 Network FreqDriftThreshold Voltage DipsThreshold 290 2.00 Meas FreqDriftThreshold 293 120 ChopOffThreshold Chop OffThreshold 293 120 ChopOffThreshold 293 10 OverVoltThresh Over voltage threshold 272 10 MinDis UnderVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre alam temperatu 274 100 PLFAdjustReq Partial load failure adjustment 280 No (0) ▼							
FreqDriftThresh Frequency Drift Threshold 290 2.00 ChopOffThresh Chop Off Threshold 293 120 ChopOffThresh Chop Off Threshold 293 120 ChopOffThreshold 293 120 ChopOffThreshold 293 120 OverVoltThreshold 272 10 UnderVoltThresh Under voltage threshold 273 15 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre alam temperate 274 100 PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjusted a 275 NotAdjusted (0) *							
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				. 290	2.00		
Image: Setup Image: ChopOffNb ChopOffNb ChopOffNb ChopOffNb 234 10 Image: OverVoltThresh OverVoltThresh OverVoltThresh 272 10 Image: OverVoltThresh UnderVoltThresh UnderVoltThresh 273 15 Image: OverVoltThresh Heatsink PreTen Heatsink pre alarm temperatu 274 100 Image: OverVoltThresh PLFAdjustReq Partial load failure adjustment 280 No (0) × PLFAdjustReq Partial load failure adjusted a 275 NotAdjusted (0) ×							
OverVoltThresh Uver voltage threshold Z72 10 UnderVoltThresh Uver voltage threshold Z73 15 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre alarm temperatu PLFAdjustReq Partial load failure adjustren Z80 No (0) PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjusted a Z75 NotAdjusted (0)		ChopOffNb	Chop Off Number	294	10		
at mols ✓ UnderVoltThres! Under voltage threshold 273 15 at molet ✓ ✓ UnderVoltThres! Under voltage threshold 273 15 at molet ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ 100 at molet ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ 100 AlmSig ✓ ✓ ✓ 100 PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjusted a 280 No(0) ▼ PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjusted a 275 NotAdjusted (0) ▼		🖉 OverVoltThresh	n Over voltage threshold	272	10		
HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre alarm temperatu 274 100 HeatsinkPreTen Heatsink pre alarm temperatu 274 100 PLFAdjustReq Partial load failure adjusted a 275 NotAdjusted (0) ▼ PLFAdjusted Partial load failure adjusted a 275 NotAdjusted (0) ▼				273	15		
AlmLat PLFAdjusteried Partial load failure adjustment 280 NotAdjusted (0)		HeatsinkPreTe	n Heatsink pre alarm tempe	rati 274	100		
		🖉 PLFAdjustReg	Partial load failure adjustm	ieni 280	No (0) 💌		
PI ESencitivitu Partial load failure sencitivitu 276 2	🕀 🛄 AlmLat 🛛 🔽			da 275	NotAdjusted (0)		
		/ PLESensitivitu	Partial load failure sensitiv	ihi 276	2		40 A
	Level 2 (Engineer) EPack v. E2.01						

Figure 144 Parameter table example

The figure above shows the default table layout. Columns can be added/deleted from the view using the 'Columns' item of the Explorer or context menus (Figure 145).



Figure 145 Column enable/disable

Figure 146 shows a typical parameter table. This function block has a number of subfolders associated with it for the configuration (setup) and for the alarms. Each of these is represented by a 'tab' across the top of the table.

🖽 EPack. 192-1	EPack.192-168-111-10-502-ID255-EPack - Parameter Explorer (Network)						
$\leftarrow \cdot \rightarrow \cdot \square$					₩-		
Meas Setup A	lmDis AlmDet AlmSig Alml	Lat AlmAck	AlmStop				
Name	Description	Address	Value	Low Limit	High Limit		
Frequency	Frequency of the line	267	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
Vline	Line voltage measurement	256	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
1	Irms of the load	257	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
IsqBurst	Average square value of load	258	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
Isq	Square value of the load curr	259	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
V	Vrms of the load	260	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
VsqBurst	Average square value of the	268	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
Vsq	Square value of load voltage	261	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
PBurst	True Power measurement in	262	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
P	True power measurement.	263	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
S	Apparent power measuremer	264	0.00	-10000000000.00	1000000000.00		
PF	Power Factor	265	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
Z	Load impedance	266	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
HtSinkTemp	Heatsink 1 temperature	269	0.00	-1000000000.00	1000000000.00		
Network.Meas	- 14 parameters						

Figure 146 Typical parameter table

Notes:

- Parameters in blue are non-editable (Read only). In the example above all the parameters are read only. Read/write parameters are in black and have a 'pencil' symbol in the 'read/Write access column at the left edge of the table. A number of such items are shown in Figure 144, above.
- 2. Columns. The default explorer window (Figure 144) contains the columns 'Name', 'Description', 'Address' and 'Value'. As can be seen from Figure 147, above, the columns to be displayed can be selected, to a certain extent, using either the 'Explorer' menu or the context menu. 'Limits' have been enabled for the example above.
- Hidden Parameters. By default, iTools hides parameters which are considered irrelevant in the current context. Such hidden parameters can be shown in the table using the 'Parameter availability' settings item of the options menu (Figure 147). Such items are displayed with a shaded background.
- 4. The full pathname for the displayed parameter list is shown at the bottom left hand corner of the window.

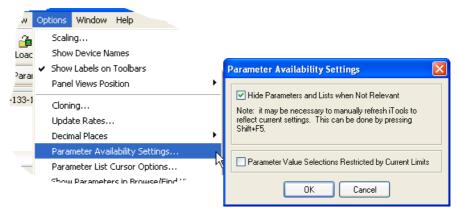


Figure 147 Show/Hide parameters

Explorer Tools

A number of tool icons appear above the parameter list:

Back to: and Forward to:.

The parameter explorer contains a history buffer of up to 10 lists that have

- been browsed in the current instance of the window. The 'Back to: (list name)' and 'Forward to: (list name)' icons allow easy retracing or repeating of the parameter list view sequence. If the mouse cursor is hovered over the tool icon, the name of the parameter list which will appear if the icon is clicked-on appears. Clicking on the arrow head displays a pick list of up to 10 previously visited lists which the user can select. Short cut = <Ctrl>+ for 'Back to' or <Ctrl>+<F> for 'Forward to'.
- Go Up a Level, Go Down a Level. For nested parameters, these buttons allow the user to navigate 'vertically' between levels. Short cut = <Ctrl>+<U> for 'Go Up a Level' or <Ctrl>+<D> for 'Go Down a Level'.
- Push pin to give the window global scope. Clicking on this icon causes the current parameter list to be permanently displayed, even if another instrument
- becomes the 'current device'.

Context Menu

	Copy Parameter	Ctrl+C
2	Parameter Propertie Parameter Help	
	Columns	•

Copy Parameter Parameter properties

Parameter Help...

Copies the clicked-on parameter to the clipboard Displays parameter properties for the clicked-on parameter Displays help information for the clicked-on parameter

Fieldbus Gateway 5 Fieldbus I/O Gateway

EPack controller units contain a great number of parameters, so it is necessary for the user to define which Input and Output parameters are to be available for block read and write. The Input/Output definitions are configured using the 'Fieldbus I/O Gateway'.

0		-1
nput Definition 🛛 🛛	atput Definition	
Name	Wired From	~
🖉 Input01	Control.Main.PV	
🖉 Input02	Control.Main.SP	
🖉 Input03	Network.Meas.Vline	
🖉 Input04	Network.Meas.V	
🖉 Input05	Network.Meas.Vline	
🖉 Input06	Network.Meas.I	
🖉 Input07	Network.Meas.PBurst	
🖉 Input08	Network.Meas.Frequency	
🖉 Input09	(not wired)	
🖉 Input10	(not wired)	
🖉 Input11	(not wired)	
🖉 Input12	(not wired)	

Figure 148 Typical Fieldbus Gateway Parameter list

As shown in Figure 148, there are two tabs within the editor, called 'Input definition' and 'Output definition'. 'Inputs' are values sent from the controller to the master. 'Outputs' are values received from the master and used by the controller, (e.g. set points written from the master).

The procedure for selecting variables is the same for both input and output definition tabs:

- Double click the next available position in the input or output data table and select the variable to assign to it. A pop-up (Figure 149) provides a browser from which a list of parameters can be opened.
- 2. Double click the parameter to assign it to the input definition.

₩ Input09	×
Delete Wire Show Help OK Cancel	

Figure 149 Browser window

Notes:

- 1. By setting the same parameter contiguously (e.g. main.sp for inputs 2 and 3) the data will be sent in IEEE format.
- 2. The Master must request the same number of parameters as there are in the table.
- 3. The tables are saved to Flash memory when the user quits configuration mode and returns to Operator mode.

When all the required parameters have been added to the lists, notes of how many 'wired' entries are included in the input and output areas should be made as this information is needed when setting up the Master.

Notes:

- 1. A maximum of 32 input and 16 output parameters may be set using the Gateway Editor.
- 2. No checks are made that output variables are writeable, and if a read only variable is included in the output list any values sent to it will be ignored with no indication.
- 3. For Modbus only:

As shown in Figure 150, 'Block Read' and 'Block Write' requests both access the same memory location (Dec:4744; hex:1288), which 'points' to the relevant input definition table or output definition table according to whether the instruction is a read or a write. The value for a parameter in the input table may differ from the value of the same parameter in the output table.

Once the changes have been made to the Input and Output definition lists, they must be downloaded to the controller unit. This is done (for both tables simultaneously) by clicking on the 'Update device Flash Memory' button on the top left of the Fieldbus Gateway Editor window. The controller performs a restart after this operation.

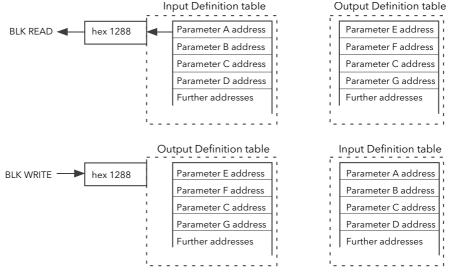


Figure 150 Block read and block write (note 3)

Watch/Recipe Editor Watch/Recipe

The watch/recipe editor is opened by clicking on the Watch/Recipe tool icon, by selecting 'Watch/Recipe' in the 'Views' menu or by using the short cut <Ctrl>+<A>. The window is in two parts: the left part containing the watch list; the right-hand part containing one or more data sets, initially empty and unnamed.

The Watch/Recipe window is used:

- 1. To monitor a list of parameters. This list can contain parameters from many different, and otherwise unrelated parameter lists within the same device. It cannot contain parameters from different devices.
- 2. To create 'data sets' of parameter values which can be selected and downloaded to the device in the sequence defined in the recipe. The same parameter may be used more than once in a recipe.

Figure 151 Watch/Recipe Editor window (with context menu)

Creating a Watch List

After opening the window, parameters can be added to it as described below. The values of the parameters update in real-time, allowing the user to monitor a number of values simultaneously.

Adding Parameters to the Watch List

- Parameters can be click-dragged into the watch list from another area of the iTools window (for example, the parameter explorer window, the graphical wiring editor, the browse tree). The parameter is placed either in an empty row at the bottom of the list, or if it is dragged on top of an already existing parameter, it is inserted above this parameter, with the remaining parameters being moved down one place.
- 2. Parameters can be dragged from one position in the list to another. In such a case, a copy of the parameter is produced, the source parameter remaining in its original position.
- 3. Parameters can be copied <Ctrl>+<C> and pasted <Ctrl>+<V> either within the list, or from a source external to it, for example the parameter browse window or the Graphical Wiring Editor.
- 4. The 'Insert item...' tool button 4 the 'Insert Parameter' item in the Recipe or context menu or the short cut <Insert> can be used to open a browse window from which a parameter is selected for insertion above the currently selected parameter.

Data Set Creation

Once all the required parameters have been added to the list, select the empty data set by clicking on the column header. Fill the data set with current values using one of the following methods:

- 1. Clicking on the 'Capture current values into a data set' tool icon 📸 (also known as the 'Snapshot Values' tool).
- 2. Selecting 'Snapshot Values' from the Recipe or Context (right-click) menu.
- 3. Using the short cut <Ctrl>+<A>.

Individual data values can now be edited by typing directly into the grid cells. Data values can be left blank or cleared, in which case, no values will be written for those parameters at download. Data values are cleared by deleting all the characters in the cell then either moving to a different cell or typing <Enter>.

The set is called 'Set 1' by default, but it can be renamed by either by using the 'Rename data set...' item in the Recipe or context menus, or by using the short cut <Ctrl>+<R>.

New, empty data sets can be added using one of the following:

- 1. Clicking on the 'Create a new empty data set' toolbar icon.
- 2. Selecting 'New Data Set' in the Recipe or context menus
- 3. Using the short cut <Ctrl>+<W>

Once created, the data sets are edited as described above.

Finally, once all the required data sets have been created, edited and saved, they can be downloaded the instrument, one at a time, using the Download tool, the 'Download Values' item in the Recipe or context menus, or the short cut <Ctrl>+<D>.

- Create a new watch/recipe list. Creates a new list by clearing out all parameters and data sets from an open window. If the current list has not been saved, confirmation is requested. Short cut <Ctrl>+<N>
- Open an existing watch/recipe file. If the current list or data set has not been saved, confirmation is requested. A file dialog box then opens allowing the user to select a file to be opened. Short cut <Ctrl>+<O>
- Save the current watch/recipe list. Allows the current set to be saved to a user specified location. Short cut <Ctrl>+<S>.
- Download the selected data set to the device. Short cut <Ctrl>+<D>
- Insert item ahead of selected item. Short cut <Insert>.
- **X** Remove recipe parameter. Short cut <Ctrl>+<Delete>.
- Move selected item. Up arrow moves selected parameter up the list; down arrow move the selected parameter down the list.
- Create a new empty data set. Short cut <Ctrl>+<W>.
- Delete an empty data set. Short cut <Ctrl>+<Delete>
- Capture current values into a data set. Fills the selected data set with values. Short cut <Ctrl>+<A>.
- Clear the selected data set. Removes values from the selected data set.
 Short cut <Shift>+<Delete>.
- Open OPC Scope. Opens a separate utility that allows trending, data logging and Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE). OPC Scope is an OPC explorer program that can connect to any OPC server that is in the windows registry. (OPC is an acronym for 'OLE for Process Control, where OLE stands for 'Object Linking and Embedding'.)

Watch/Recipe Context Menu

The Watch/Recipe Context menu items have the same functions as described above for toolbar items.

Parameter Addresses (Modbus)

Introduction

The iTools address fields display each parameter's Modbus address to be used when addressing integer values over the serial communications link. In order to access these values as IEEE floating point values, the calculation: IEEE address = {(Modbus address x 2) + hex 8000} should be used.

Notes:

- Certain parameters may have values which exceed the maximum value that can be read from or written to using a 16-bit integer communications. Such parameters have a scaling factor applied to them as described in Parameter Scaling.
- 2. When using 16-bit scaled integer Modbus addressing, time parameters can be read from or written to in 10ths of minutes, or in 10ths of seconds as defined in the parameter Instrument.config. TimerRes.

Parameter Types

The following parameter types are used:

bool	Boolean
uint8	Unsigned 8-bit integer
int16	Signed 16-bit integer
uint16	Unsigned 16-bit integer
int32	Signed 32-bit integer
uint32	Unsigned 32-bit integer
time32	Unsigned 32-bit integer (time in milliseconds)
float32	IEEE 32-bit floating point
string	String - an array of unsigned 8-bit integers.

Parameter Scaling

Some parameters might have values which exceed the maximum value (32767) that can be read/written via 16-bit scaled integer comms. Such parameters are assigned a scaling factor as described in "Scaling Factor" on page 175.

Parameter List

The full list of parameters available via the communications link is to be found in the SCADA table supplied as a part of the iTools help system. Individual parameter addresses also appear in each iTools configuration page along with 'enumerations' showing all the possible values that the parameter can take.

To display the parameters list load the Parameter Help file (*Phelp_Epack_Vx.xx.chm*) from the iTools menu;

- 1. Select Help, Device Help from the iTools menu bar.
- 2. The Parameter Help file will display.
- 3. Select the topic Scada from the Content tab.
- 4. Scroll to the heading List of Parameters in the main window, click EPack parameters.

The EPack Parameters table will be displayed.

Alarms

\land DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Use appropriate safety interlocks where personnel and/or equipment hazards exist.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

EPack alarms protect thyristors and loads against abnormal operation, and provide the user with valuable information regarding the type of fault.

Under no circumstances must these alarms be regarded as a replacement for proper personnel protection.

Global System Monitoring

At power-up and in running for some functionalities EPack performs a check of most of electronic parts (power supply, digital memory, and so on). In case of failure, EPack reports a status in the Global Status Parameters available using communication and displays a message on its front fascia.

There are four types of message described below:

- The first one is related to a detected failure on displays microcontroller board and EPack displays 'CONFIG ERROR'. For this kind of problem it is recommended to send the unit back to a repair center. EPack also displays a code in hexadecimal for a technician. This code is also available in decimal through iTools in Global Status 0.
- The second one reports issues related to a hardware problem detected by the microcontroller. Issues can be located on the different boards. In this situation EPack displays 'HW Problem'. For this kind of problem it is recommended to send the unit back to a repair center or contact your local representative. EPack also displays a code in hexadecimal for a technician. This code is also available in decimal through iTools in Global Status 1.
- The third one is more related to configuration data set on production line, or during upgrade. In this case EPack displays 'INVALID DATA'. For this kind of problem it is recommended to send the unit back to a repair center. EPack also displays a code in hexadecimal for a technician. This code is also available in decimal through iTools in Global Status 2.
- The fourth one concerns detection of an internal malfunction mainly on the display microcontroller board. For this event EPack displays 'INTERNAL FAILURE'. For this kind of problem it is recommended to send the unit back to a repair center. EPack also displays a code in hexadecimal for a technician. This code is also available in decimal through iTools in Global Status 3.

System Alarms

System alarms are considered to be 'Major Events' which help prevent proper operation of the system, and the unit is placed in standby mode.

The following subsections describe each of the possible system alarms.

Missing mains

Supply power is missing.

Thyristor short circuit

A thyristor short circuit leads to current flow even when not firing.

Over temperature

Reserved for future development.

Network dips

This detects a reduction in supply voltage, and if this reduction exceeds a configurable measured value (VdipsThreshold), firing will be inhibited until the supply voltage returns to a suitable value. VdipsThreshold represents a percentage change in supply voltage between successive half cycles, and can be defined by the user in the Network.Setup menu, as described in "Network Setup configuration" on page 191.

Mains frequency fault detected

Triggered if the supply voltage frequency strays out of the range 47 to 63Hz, or if the mains frequency changes, for one cycle to the next, by more than the threshold defined in the Network.Setup menu described in "Network Setup configuration" on page 191.

The value can be adjusted between 0.9% and 5%, the default value is 5%.

Chop Off alarm

Chop-off alarm will be active when a current threshold is exceeded for more than a pre-defined number of mains periods. This current threshold is user- adjustable from 100% to 350% of unit's nominal current. (to be found in the Network.setup area of configuration ("Network Setup configuration" on page 191).

Process Alarms

Process Alarms are related to the application and can be configured either to stop the unit firing (Standby Mode) or to allow operation to continue. Process alarms can also be configured to be latched and if so, they have to be acknowledged before the alarm is considered to be non-active. Alarms cannot be acknowledged until the trigger source has returned to a non-active state.

Total Load Failure (TLF)

No load is connected.

Closed Loop alarm

Closed loop break alarm is currently active.

External input alarm

The external input alarm associated with the alarm block is active.

Over current detection

The analog input over current detection alarm is active.

Over Voltage Alarm

An 'OverVoltThreshold' can be configured in the Network.Setup area of configuration ("Network Setup configuration" on page 191) as a percentage of VLineNominal. If the VLine voltage rises above this threshold the OverVoltage alarm is set.

Note: This Alarm is returned FALSE if the MissingMains Alarm is set.

Under Voltage Alarm

An 'UnderVoltThreshold' can be configured in the Network.Setup area of configuration ("Network Setup configuration" on page 191) as a percentage of VLineNominal. If the VLine voltage falls below this threshold the UnderVoltage alarm is set.

Note: This Alarm is returned FALSE if the MissingMains Alarm is set.

This alarm detects a static increase in load impedance by comparing the reference load impedance (as configured by the user) with the actual measured load impedance over a mains cycle (for phase angle firing) and over the burst period (for burst and logic firing).

Non-inductive loads, for example resistance furnaces, resistive loads with low temperature coefficient or short wave infrared loads can be monitored using this function. For other load types, for example AC51 slightly inductive loads or AC56a primary of transformer, please consult Eurotherm.

The sensitivity of the partial load failure measurement can be set to any value between 2 to 6 inclusive, where an entry of 2, for example, means that one half of the elements (or more) must be open circuit in order to trigger the alarm; an entry of 3 means that one third of the elements (or more) must be open circuit in order to trigger the alarm, and so on down to one sixth. All elements must have identical characteristics and identical impedance values and must be connected in parallel).

The relevant parameters (PLFAdjustReq, and PLFSensitivity) are both to be found in Network.Setup, as described in "Network Setup configuration" on page 191..

Partial Load Unbalance (PLU)

This alarm is applicable only to three-phase load configurations and indicates when the difference between highest and lowest current value reaches a threshold (PLUthreshold) configurable between 5% and 50% of the highest load current. PLUthreshold appears in Network.Setup, as described in "Network Setup configuration" on page 191.

Indication Alarms

Indication Alarms signal events for operator action if required. Indication alarms cannot be configured to stop power module firing, but they may be latched if required, and if latched, they must be acknowledged for the Signalling Status to return to the normal (non-alarm) state.

Process Value Transfer active

Indicates when a transfer control mode (e.g. $V^2 \leftrightarrow I^2 P \leftrightarrow I^2$ or $V^2 \leftrightarrow I^2$) is active.

Limitation active

Indicates when the internal firing control loop limits the firing output $(I^2 \text{ or } V^2)$ (in order not to exceed the adjusted maximum value)

Load Over-Current

Indicates when a configurable RMS load current threshold (OverIthreshold) is reached or exceeded. The parameter is found in the Network.Setup area of configuration ("Network Setup configuration" on page 191) and is configurable as 10% to 400% of Nominal Current.

Alarms

Maintenance

Precautions

A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See applicable national standards e.g. NFPA70E, CSA Z462, BS 7671, NFC 18-510.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Refer to manual for installation and servicing.
- The product is not suitable for isolation applications, within the meaning of EN60947-1 Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on the loads of the equipment.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Do not disassemble, repair or modify the equipment. Contact your supplier for repair.
- This product must be installed, connected and used in compliance with prevailing standards and/or installation regulations.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Reasonable use and responsibility

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. While every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the information, your supplier shall not be held liable for errors contained herein.

EPack is an "AC semiconductor controllers for non-motor loads" designed according to IEC60947-4-3 & UL60947-4-1, it meets the requirements of the Low voltage and EMC European Directives which covers safety and EMC aspects.

Use in other applications, or failure to observe the installation instructions of this manual may impair safety or EMC.

The safety and EMC of any system incorporating this product is the responsibility of the assembler/installer of the system.

Failure to use approved software/hardware with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Eurotherm shall not be held responsible for any damage, injury, losses or expenses caused by inappropriate use of the product (EPack), or failure to comply with these instructions.

Under some circumstances, the EPack heatsink temperature may rise by more than 50°C and it can take up to 15 minutes to cool after the product is shut down.

CAUTION

HOT SURFACE RISK OF BURNS

- Allow heatsink to cool before servicing.
- Do not allow flammable or heat-sensitive parts in the immediate vicinity of heatsink.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

Preventive Maintenance

⚠ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Tighten all connections in conformance with the torque specifications. Periodic inspections are required.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

See Table 1, "Connection Details" on page 41.

Wires are not properly retained in terminals with insufficient torque.

Insufficient torque may increase the contact resistance:

- The protective earth ground connection may be too resistive. In case of short circuit between live parts and heatsink, the heatsink may reach a dangerous voltage.
- The power terminals will overheat.

Excessive torque may damage the terminal.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Do not allow anything to fall through the case apertures and ingress the product.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Conductive or non-conductive parts which ingress product may reduce or short the insulations barriers inside the product.

HAZARD OF FIRE

Heat-sink must be cleaned regularly. Periodicity depends on the local environment, but should not exceed 1 year.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Fusing



HAZARD OF FIRE

- This product does not contain any branch-circuit protection, the installer must add branch-circuit protection upstream of the unit.
- Branch circuit protection must be selected according to maximum current in each phase and must be rated in compliance with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Branch circuit protection are mandatory to protect the wiring.

- CE: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to IEC 60364-4-43 or applicable local regulations.
- UL: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to NEC article 210.20, it is necessary for compliance with National Electric Code(NEC) requirements.

\land DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- High speed fuses (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device), as listed in fusing sections, are mandatory to protect EPack against load short circuit.
- If opening of either the branch circuit protective device or the high-speed fuses (supplemental fuses) occurs, the product must be examined by suitably qualified personnel and replaced if damaged.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The power circuit must be protected by a supplementary fuse, which should be used in conjunction with suitable fuse holders (and contact kits, if required) as shown in Table 8 or Table 9.

Note: With a supplementary fuse (high speed fuse), EPack is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100kA RMS symmetrical amperes, 500 Volts Maximum (coordination Type 2)

Coordination Type 1 and Type 2 explanations

Type 1: Type 1 coordination requires that, under short-circuit conditions, the device must cause no danger to persons or to the installation but may not be suitable for further service without repair and replacement of parts.

Type 2: Type 2 coordination requires that, under short-circuit conditions, the device must cause no danger to persons or to the installation and must be suitable for further use.

Table 8: Details of high-speed fuses (WITHOUT microswitch) and fuse holders required for EPack with order code HSP

EPack	F	Fuse manufacturer		E h d.	Fuse hol	der	Contact kit						
current rating	Fuse rating	& catalog number	Qty	Fuse body size (mm)	Manufacturer & catalog number	Qty	Qty						
≤25A	30A or 32A	Mersen FR10GR69V30 Mersen FR10GR69V32		10×38	Mersen US103 or Mersen CUS103								
32A	40A	Mersen FR14GR69V40 Mersen FR14GC69V40 Cooper-Bussmann FWP-40A14F	3	3	3	14×51	Mersen US143						
40A	50A	Mersen FR14UC69V50 Cooper-Bussmann FWP-50A14F				3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
50A	63A	Mersen FR22UD69V63											
63A	80A	Mersen FR22GC69V80 Cooper Bussmann FWP-80A22F		22x58	Mersen US223								
80A to 125A	200A	Mersen FR27UQ69V200T		27x60	Mersen US273								

Table 9: Details of high-speed fuses (WITH microswitch) and fuse holders required for EPack with order code HSM

EPack				Fuse	Fuse hold	er	Contact k	it
current rating	Fuse rating	Fuse manufacturer & catalog number	Qty	body size (mm)	Manufacturer & catalog number	Qty	Manufacturer & catalog number	Qty
≤25A	32A	Mersen FR14GR69V32T Mersen FR14GC69V32T Cooper-Bussmann FWP-32A14FI						
32A	40A	Mersen FR14GR69V40T Mersen FR14GC69V40T Cooper-Bussmann FWP-40A14FI		14×51	Mersen US143		Mersen Y227928A	
40A	50A	Mersen FR14UD69V50T Cooper-Bussmann FWP-50A14FI	3			1		3
50A	63A	Mersen FR22UD69V63T						
63A	80A	Mersen FR22GC69V80T Cooper-Bussmann FWP-80A22FI		22×58	Mersen US223		Mersen G227959A	
80A & 125A	200A	Mersen FR27UQ69V200T		27x60	Mersen US273		Mersen E227612A	

A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Tighten all connections in conformance with the torque specifications. Periodic inspections are required.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Unless otherwise mentioned on the side of the fuse holders, torque fuse holders terminals at 2Nm (18lb in).

Wires are not properly retained in terminals with insufficient torque. Insufficient torque may increase the contact resistance, causing the power terminals to overheat.

Excessive torque may damage the terminal.

Fuse Holders Contacts Kit

For technical specification and recommended wiring, see "Fuse Holders Contact Data (Fuse Ordering Code HSM)" on page 59.

Fuse holder dimensions

Figures 152 to 156 show dimensional details for the various fuse holders listed in Table 8 and Table 9 (not all shown to the same scale).

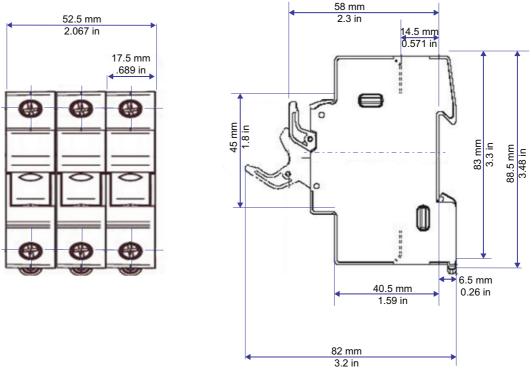
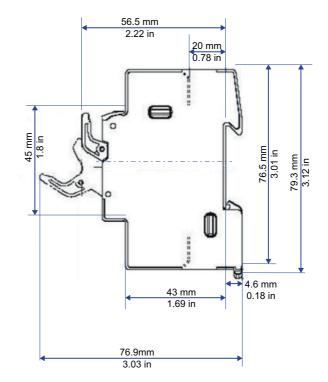
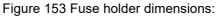
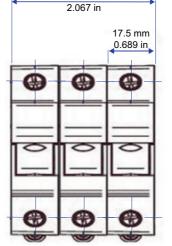


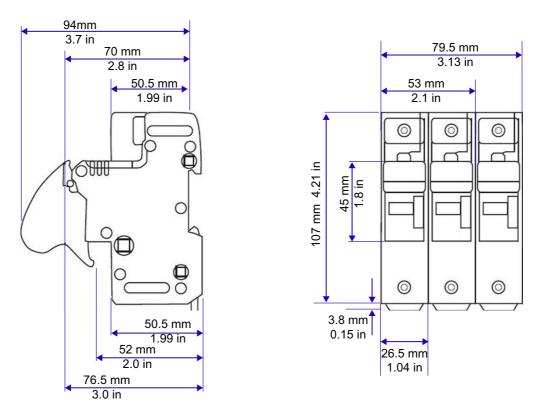
Figure 152 Fuse holder dimensions: US103 (10x38mm)CUS103 (10x38mm)

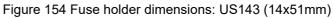






52.5 mm





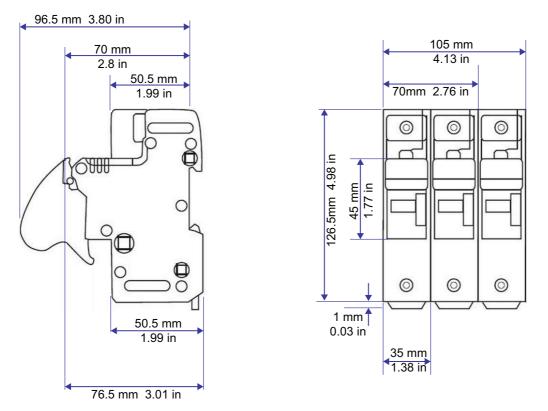


Figure 155 Fuse holder dimensions: US223 (22x58mm)

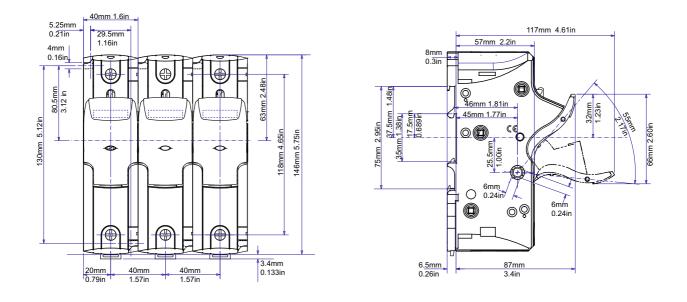


Figure 156 Fuse holder dimensions: US273 (27x60mm)

NOTICE

NORTH AMERICA REGULATIONS

For USA & Canada EPack 125A fuse holder terminal capacity is rated UL 1/0AWG, this may decrease the maximum Load current according to standard, ambient temperature, wiring arrangement.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in non-compliance to North America regulations.

For compliance with;

• UL508A (Industrial Control Panels) the continuous load shall not exceed 120A.

Note: As per UL508A, an ambient temperature of 40°C is assigned to all cabinet, cable stranded copper rated 90°C.

- NFPA79 (Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery) full load current shall not exceed:
 - 125A at 35°C ambient temperature
 - 120A at 40°C ambient temperature
 - ° 115A at 45°C ambient temperature.

Note: According to NFPA79 sub article 12.5.2, NFPA70 (NEC) article 310.15 may be used to size conductor rated 90°C. Higher full load current may be achieved with NFPA70 (NEC) see below.

 NFPA 70 (NEC: National electric code), continuous load may be limited according to ambient temperature of the cabinet and wiring arrangement.

Note: Single-Insulated Conductors and NEC Table 310.15(B)(17) (formerly Table 310.17) may be use for continuous load up to 125A at 45°C.

Auxiliary supply fuse protection

🕂 DANGER

HAZARD OF FIRE

 The cables used to connect the EPack's auxiliary supply and voltage reference must be protected by branch-circuit protection. Such branch-circuit protection must comply with local and national regulatory requirements.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Branch circuit protection is mandatory to protect the cable used to connect the auxiliary supply.

- CE: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to IEC 60364-4-43 or applicable local regulations.
- UL: branch-circuit protection must be selected according to NEC article 210.20, it is necessary for compliance with National Electric Code(NEC) requirements.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• A High-speed fuse (supplemental fuses in addition to branch circuit protective device) or a double protection fuse as listed in fusing sections is mandatory for 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

This fuse is necessary to avoid the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply to emit flame or molten element in case of breakdown of a component.

High-speed fuse (supplemental fuse) does not protect the wiring they must be fitted in addition to branch circuit protective device).

Double protection fuse combines a branch circuit fuse and a high-speed fuse. Double protection fuse must be selected according to applicable national standards. Branch circuit protection fuses Standard in USA/Canada differ from IEC standards (e.g; Europe (CE)). Therefore:

- A fuse approved as branch circuit protection fuses in USA/Canada is not a branch circuit in all countries where IEC standards apply (e.g; Europe (CE)).
- A fuse approved as branch circuit protection fuses in all countries where IEC standards apply (e.g; Europe (CE)) is not a branch circuit in USA/Canada.

UL Fuse Category	CE Fuse Category	Fuse (Make and Type)
Supplemental fuse (Does NOT protect the wiring)	Supplemental fuse (Does NOT protect the wiring)	ATM2-type fuse rated 2A, 600Vac/dc: Mersen/Ferraz Shawmut (UL file: E33925)
Double protection fuse (Combines a Branch circuit fuse and a High-speed fuse)	Supplemental fuse (Does NOT protect the wiring)	J-type fuse rated 3A/600Vac: HSJ3 by Mersen/Ferraz Shawmut (UL file: E2137; CSA class: 1422-02 LR12636) or DFJ-3 by Eaton/Cooper Bussman (UL file: E4273; CSA class: 1422-02 LR53787)
Supplemental fuse (Does NOT protect the wiring)	Double protection fuse (Combines a Branch circuit fuse and a High-speed fuse)	gR-type fuses rated 3A /700V: FR10GR69V3 (V1014571) by Mersen/Ferraz Shawmut (UL file: E76491)

Table 10: Auxiliary supply fuse protection

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 If opening of any fuses or branch circuit protection device that supply the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply occurs, first check the wiring. If the wiring is not damaged, do not replace the fuse and contact the manufacturer's local service center.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the wiring is not damaged a component inside the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply is broken and product must go back to service center.

Instrument upgrade

Instrument upgrade is done in two steps: upgrading iTools to the latest version and upgrading software.

iTools upgrade

On the www.eurotherm.com website, locate the 'Downloads' section, and click the 'Quick search' button for ITOOLS. A list of the latest available iTools software and documentation is displayed. Click on the links to download and install the latest version.

Life Is On Eurotherm.			1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	Search Q ALL PRODUCTS V SOLUTIONS V SUPPORT V SERVICES V ABOUT EUROTHERM V					
ome Downloads									
Downloads									
All Brochure CAD	Case Study	Certificate	Data Sheet	General	Note App	Software	Terms & Conditions	User Guide	Whitepaper
Search downloads:			Apply fil	Apply filters Click to download the latest version			load the		
							latest	. version	
File Name				Size			Upload Date		
Eurotherm Tools v9.81				375.84 MB			12/12/2019		
Eurotherm iTools Software Tools Brochure (HA026177 lss 5)			i)	7	753.63 KB		18/10/2018		
Eurotherm (Tools Help Manual (HA028838 issue 5)				3.30 MB			18/10/2018		

Downloads section

Firmware upgrade

With the relevant instrument selected in iTools, click on the Help menu and select 'Check for Updates...'.

Click on 'Firmware Upgrade Tool...' and follow the instructions.

ontents	😑 Update Checker - iTools	5		
ase Notes s on the Web	iTools Version Information			
······································	Your Installed Version:	9.57.11		
evice Help evice Information	Current Release:	9.57.11		
neck for Updates	Release Date:	2013-12-20		
stem Information	You are already running th	e latest version of il	Fools.	
pols Installation Diagnostics				
pout	Online Devices			
	Name	Туре	Version	Update Available
	EPack.ID255-EPack	EPack	V2.03	V2.03
				Firmware Upgrade

Figure 157 Check for updates

Software upgrade

Software upgrade can be carried out by one of two methods, as follows:

Obtaining a Passcode via Telephone

- Telephone the local Eurotherm Sales/Service agent with the serial number of the instrument to be updated, and the current software version. All required information (Serial Number, Software version, current features codes) can be found in Instrument Option folder using iTools (see Figure 158 below). This information can also be found through HMI in configuration mode 'Info' menu.
- 2. Place an order for the required new functionality.
- 3. A new passcode will be provided which is to be entered in the Info menu available from the front panel whilst in Configuration mode or in the Instrument Options configuration using iTools.

🌐 EPack.192-168-255-3-502-ID255-EPack - Parameter Explorer (Instrument)							
Display Chains Configuration Options ScalingFactor							
Name	Description	Address	Value Wired From				
SerialNo	Serial Number	5102	1716				
Software	Software version of the product	5103	A3.02				
Passcode1	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 1	5099	51317				
🖉 Passcode2	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 2	5100	11674				
Passcode3	Pass Code for Features Secure Word 3	5101	0				
Instrument.Options - 5 parameters							

Figure 158 Instrument options configuration

Obtaining a Passcode via iTools

- 1. Click on the 'iTools Secure' tool button
- 2. Accept the warning message.
- 3. Select the functions required from the displayed list (figure 159).
- 4. Click on 'Proceed...'. This sends an email requesting the option passcode. Follow the instructions.
- 5. Enter the new passcode as described in step three above.

🖘 iTools Secure
Options Help
No Hardlock Found epk000A8D2900FF-local.ID255-EPack
Rating Enable 32A 💌
☑ Limit Loops
Transfer Control
Power Control
Energy Function Block
Graphical Wiring Editor
CEM Security
C EtherNet/IP
PROFINE T
Proceed Close

Figure 159 iTools secure

EPack Licence Notice

FreeRTOS

EPack is powered by an original FreeRTOS from version v7.1.0. FreeRTOS is available at http://www.freertos.org

EtherNet/IP EPack uses an embedded MOLEX Ethernet/IP stack.

PROFINET EPack uses an embedded PROFINET PORT stack.

/* microutf8 Copyright © 2011 by Tomasz Konojacki

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice must be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. /*

lwip

/*

- * Copyright © 2001, 2002 Swedish Institute of Computer Science.
- * All rights reserved.

* Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are

* permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of * conditions and the following disclaimer.

- * 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list
- * of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation
- * and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * 3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products
- * derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Technical Specification

Standards

Countries	Standard/ Certification symbol	Standard/Certification details			
European community	CE	EN60947-4-3:2014. (identical to IEC60947-4-3:2014) Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear - Part 4-3:Contactors and motor-starters - AC semiconductor controllers and contactors for non-motor loads. Declaration of conformity available on request.			
USA & Canada	cULus	USA: UL60947-4-1 Canada: CAN/CSA C22.2 NO.60947-4-1-14 Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear - Part 4-1: Contactors and Motor-Starters - Electromechanical Contactors and Motor-Starters U.L. File N° E86160			
Australia	Ò	Regulatory Compliance Mark (RCM) to Australian Communication and Media Authority. Based on compliance to EN60947-4-3:2014.			
China	/	Product not listed in catalog of products subject to China Compulsory Certification (CCC)			
	EtherNet/IP	ODVA declaration of conformity			
ALL	Cybersecurity Achilles® L1	Cybersecurity certification to Achilles® CRT Level 1			

The product is designed and produced to comply with:

Installation Categories

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Do not exceed the device's ratings.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The insulation barriers of the equipment have been designed for the rating as defined in the table below at an altitude of 2000m maximum.

	Installation Category	Rated impulse withstand voltage (Uimp)	Rated insulation voltage (Ui)	Maximum value of rated operational voltage to earth
Communications	II	0.5kV	50V	50V
Standard IO	II	0.5kV	50V	50V
Relays		4kV	300V	300V
Power terminals		6kV	500V	500V

Table 11	: Installation	categories
----------	----------------	------------

Specification

Auxiliary supply

Frequency range:	47 to 63Hz
Power requirement:	24V dc 12W
	24V ac 18VA
	500V ac 20VA
Rated control supply voltage (Us):	24V ac/dc (+20%, -20%)
	or
	100 to 500V (+10%, -15%)

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

The maximum voltage between any pole of the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary ٠ supply and all other terminals must be lower than 550Vac.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the 85Vac to 550Vac auxiliary supply is supplied by a dedicated transformer the phasing must be checked to avoid overvoltage.

∧ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

The "24V auxiliary supply" is an SELV circuit. The supply voltage must be • derived from a SELV or PELV circuit.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits.

The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

Power

Frequency range Rated operational voltages (Ue): Rated operational currents (Ie) Power Dissipation	47 to 63Hz 100 to 500V (+10%, -15%) 16 to 125 Amps 1.3 Watts per Ampere, per phase
Duty cycle Device form designation	Uninterrupted duty / continuous operation Form 4 (Semiconductor controller)
Short circuit protection	By external supplemental fuses (high speed fuse) - see "Fusing" on page 239.
Rated conditional short-circuit current	100kA (Coordination Type 2)
Utilization categories	AC-51: Non-inductive or slightly inductive loads, resistance furnaces AC-55b: Switching of incandescent lamps AC-56a: Transformer Primary
Heater Type	Low/high temperature coefficient and non-aging/aging types: MOSI Molybdenum Silicide, Silicon Carbide, Carbon.
Overload conditions	AC-51: 1 x le continuous AC-55b: 1 x le continuous AC-55b: 2.5 x le - 100ms AC-56a: 1 x le continuous
Load Power factor	0.85 for Loads from 32A up to 125A

A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

• Do not exceed the device's ratings.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Only SLIGHTLY inductive loads are allowed, contact Eurotherm for advice for Loads lower than 32A.

Physical

Dimensions and mounting centers Weight:

See Figure 4, Figure 5, Figure 6 and Figure 7 for details

16 to 32A units 3060g + user connectors 40 to 63A units 3510g + user connectors 80A and 100A units 5830g + user connectors 125 A units 7940g + user connectors

Environment

Temperature limits: Operating:

Storage: Altitude: 0°C to 45°C at 1000m 0°C to 40°C at 2000m -25°C to +70°C 1000m maximum at 45°C 2000m maximum at 40°C

A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

Do not exceed the device's ratings.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The insulations barriers of the equipment have been designed for an altitude of 2000m maximum.

HAZARD OF FIRE

• At commissioning ensure that under maximum load condition, the ambient temperature of the product will not exceed the limit stated in that manual.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Enclosure type ratings (UL) All units: Degree of Protection (CE) All units:

Open type

IP20 (EN60529)

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

Respect electrical installation requirements to ensure, improve the IP rating.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

If the conductor stripping lengths of the power cables are longer than the requirements IP20 is compromised.

If the conductor stripping lengths of the power cables are shorter than the requirements there is a potential risk of total loss of connection. Wires may slip out of the terminals.

If the plastic knockouts are removed, and cables with diameter lower than 9mm are used, the IP20 is compromised and the product is IP10.

Humidity limits: Atmosphere Pollution degree: 5% to 95% RH (non-condensing) Non-explosive, non-corrosive, non-conductive Pollution degree 2

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

 Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the product is mounted.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The product has been designed for pollution degree 2 according to IEC60947-1 definition: Normally, only non-conductive pollution occurs. Occasionally, however, a temporary conductivity caused by condensation may be expected.

EPack

External wiring		
-	IEC/CE: Mu	ust comply with IEC60364-1 and
		C60364-5-54 and all applicable local
	reg	gulations.
		ring must comply with NEC and all applicable
		cal regulations. Cross sections must comply
		th NEC, Article 310 Table 310-16. (See Table 1
	of	this manual for temperature ratings).
Shock	Ac	cording to EN60068-2-27 and IEC60947-1
	(A	nnex Q, Category E)
Vibration	Ac	cording to EN60068-2-6 and IEC60947-1
	(A	nnex Q, Category E)
EMC Standard:	EN	160947-4-3:2014.
	Se	e Table 12 and Table 13 for EMC emission and
	im	munity levels attained.

EMC immunity tests (According to EN60947-4-3:2014)				
	Level		Criteria	
	Requested	Achieved	Requested	Achieved
Electrostatic discharge (test method of IEC 61000-4-2)	Air discharge mode 8kV Contact discharge mode 4kV	Air discharge mode 8kV Contact discharge mode 4kV	2	2
Radiated radio-frequency electromagnetic field test (test method of EN 61000-4-3)	10V/m from 80MHz to 1GHz and from 1.4GHz to 2GHz	10V/m from 80MHz to 1GHz and from 1.4GHz to 2GHz	1	1
Fast transient/burst test (5/50ns) (test method of EN 61000-4-4)	Power ports 2kV / 5kHz Signal ports 1kV / 5kHz	Power ports 4kV / 5 kHz Signal ports 2kV / 5 kHz	2	2
Surge Voltage test (1,2/50µs - 8/20µs) (test method of EN 61000-4-5)	2kV line to earth 1kV line to line	2kV line to earth 1kV line to line	2	2
Conducted radio-frequency test (test method of EN 61000-4-6)	10V (140dBµV) from 0.15MHz to 80 MHz	15V (143.5dBµV) from 0.15MHz to 80 MHz	1	1
Voltage dips test	0% during 0.5 cycle & 1 cycle	0% during 0.5 cycle & 1 cycle	2	2
(test method of EN 61000-4-11)	40% during 10/12 cycles	40% during 10/12 cycles	3	2
	70% during 25/30 cycles	70% during 25/30 cycles	3	2
	80% during 250/300 cycles	80% during 250/300 cycles	3	2
Short interruptions test (test method of EN 61000-4-11)	0% during 250/300 cycles	0% during 250/300 cycles	3	2

Table 12: EMC Immunity Tests

Table 13: EMC Emission Tests

EMC emission tests (According to EN60947-4-3:2014)				
Test	Frequency (MHz)	Limit level for class A industrial		Comments
		Quasi peak dB (µV)	Average dB (µV)	
Radiated radio frequency emission test	30 to 230	40 at 10m	N/A	Pass
According to EN60947-4-3:2014 (test method of CISPR11)	230 to 1000	47 at 10m	N/A	
Conducted radio frequency emission test	0.15 to 0.5	79	66	The conducted
According to EN 60947-4-3:2014 for rated power <20kVA (test method of CISPR11)	5 to 30	73	60	emissions can meet the requirement of IEC60947-4-3:2014
Conducted radio frequency emission test According to EN 60947-4-3:2014 for rated power >20kVA	0.15 to 0.5	100	90	with an external filter added on the line
	0.5 to 5	86	76	connections.
(test method of CISPR11)	5 to 30	90 to 73 ¹	80 to 60 ¹	This is in line with the rest of the industry ²

1. Decrease with log of frequency emissions.

2. Technical note TN1618 (available upon customer request) describes the recommended filter structures which reduce conducted radio-frequency emissions.



UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Do not use the product for critical control or protection applications where human or equipment safety relies on the operation of the control circuit.
- Signal and power voltage wiring must be kept separate from one another. Where this is impractical, all wires must be rated to the power voltage & shielded cables are recommended for signal wiring.
- This product has been designed for environment A (Industrial). Use of this product in environment B (domestic, commercial and light industrial) may cause unwanted electromagnetic disturbances in which cases the installer may be required to take adequate mitigation measures.
- For Electromagnetic Compatibility, the panel or DIN rail to which the product is attached must be grounded.
- Observe all electrostatic discharge precautions before handling the unit.
- At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

To reach EMC immunity levels and criteria as stated in Table 12, Nominal current parameter (INominal) must be set between 25% & 100% of product current rating.

▲ DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- The I/O Input & Output, the Communications ports are SELV circuit. They must be connected to SELV or PELV circuit.
- The relay output and the fuse holders contacts are compliant to the SELV requirements; they can be connected to SELV, PELV circuit or to voltage up to 230V (maximum value of rated operational voltage to earth:230V)

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

SELV is defined (in IEC60947-1) as an electrical circuit in which the voltage cannot exceed 'ELV' under normal conditions or under single fault conditions, including earth ground faults in other circuits.

The definition of ELV is complex as it depends on environment, signal frequency, etc. See IEC 61140 for further details.

Operator Interface

Display

Push buttons

1.44" square TFT colour display allowing viewing of selected parameter values in real time, plus configuration of instrument parameters for users with adequate access permission.
Four push buttons provide page and item entry and scroll facilities.

Inputs/Outputs

All figures are with respect to 0V, unless otherwise stated.

Number of inputs/outputs	1 Analog input; 2 Digital inputs (DI1 and DI2); 1 Relay output 1 User configured output (DI2 input) * (* Exclusive to DI2 when not used as an digital
Update rate	input). See I/O Input & Output Details (page 55) Twice the mains frequency. Defaults to 55Hz (18 ms) if the supply frequency lies outside the range 47 to 63Hz.)
Termination	Removable 5-way connector. Located as shown in Figure 14.
Analog Input	
Performance	See Table 14 and Table 15
Input type	Configurable as one of: 0 to 10V, 1 to 5V,2 to 10V, 0 to 5V, 0 to 20mA, 4 to 20mA
Absolute input maxima	-0.6V to +16V and ±40mA

HA033541 Issue 02

Analog input: Voltage input performance		
Parameter	Typical	Max/Min
Total voltage working input span		0V to +10V
Resolution (electrical noise free) (note 1)	11 bits	
Calibration accuracy (notes 2, 3)	<0.1%	<0.1%
Linearity accuracy (note 2)		±0.1%
Ambient temperature deviation (note 3)		<0.01%/°C
Input resistance (terminal to 0V)	142kΩ	±0.2%
Note 1: w.r.t. total working span Note 3: After warm up. Ambient = 25 °C Note 2: % of effective range (0 to 5V, 0 to 10V) Note 3: After warm up. Ambient = 25 °C		

Table 15: Analog input specification (current inputs)

Analog input: Current input performance		
Parameter	Typical	Max/Min
Total current working input span		0 to +25mA
Resolution (electrical noise free) (note 1)	11 bits	
Calibration accuracy (notes 2, 3)		<0.2%
Linearity accuracy (note 2)		±0.1%
Ambient temperature deviation (note 2)		±0.01%/°C
Input resistance (terminal to 0v)	<102Ω	±1%
Note 1: w.r.t. total working span Note 2: % of effective range (0 to 20mA)	Note 3: After warm up. Amb	ient = 25 °C

Digital Inputs

Voltage inputs	
Active level (high):	11V <vin<30v 6ma<input="" current<30ma<="" td="" with=""></vin<30v>
Non-active level (low):	-3V <vin<5v 2ma<input="" current<30ma<br="" with="">Or</vin<5v>
	5V <vin<11v <2ma<="" current="" input="" td="" with=""></vin<11v>
Contact closure inputs	
Source current:	10mA min - 15mA max
Open contact (non active)	
resistance:	>800Ω
Closed contact (active)	
resistance:	<450Ω
Absolute Maxima:	±30V or ±25mA

Note: Absolute maximum ratings refer to externally applied signals

Digital Output

User configured output (DI2): ±2% 10.2V, 10mA

For example; To supply a potentiometer between $2k\Omega - 10k\Omega$ (±20%) used to drive the Analog Input when set to Voltage mode - see Inputs/Outputs (page 259).

Relay Specification

The relay has gold plated contacts suitable for 'dry circuit' (low current) use. See "I/O Input & Output Details" on page 55. Contact life

C	Jontact me		
		Resistive loads:	100,000 operations
		Inductive loads:	Derate as per accompanying graph
			(Figure 160)
H	ligh power use		
		Current:	2A (resistive loads)
		Voltage:	<264V RMS (UL: voltage 250Vac.)
L	ow power use		
		Current:	>10 mA
		Voltage:	>5V
Contact configuration:		ation:	Single pole change-over (one set of Common,
			Normally Open and Normally Closed
			contacts)
Т	ermination		Removable 3-way connector. Located as
			shown in Figure 14.
h	nstallation Categ	Jory	Installation category III, assuming that nominal
			phase to earth ground voltage is \leq 300V RMS.
	Absolute max. sw	vitching	<2A at 240V RMS (resistive loads)
C	apability		

Note: 'Normally Closed' and 'Normally Open' refer to the relay when the coil is not energized.

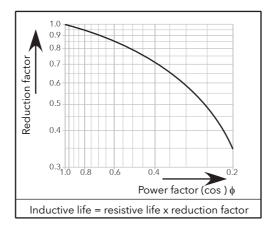


Figure 160 Relay derating curves

Fuse Holders Contacts Kit Specification

Fuse Holders Contacts Kit are delivered with NO, NC contact

Connection: Faston lugs 2.8 X 0.5 mm Rated insulation voltage: 250VAC

Rated operational current following IEC 60947-5 & -1

Utilization category AC15: 4A/24V, 4A/48V, 3A/127V, 2.5A/240V Utilization category DC13: 3A/24V, 1A/48V, 0.2A/127V, 0.1A/240V

Minimum operational current and voltage: (For contact kit reference according to product rating see Table 4 and Table 5) Contact kit Mersen Y227928A, for fuse size 14x51, or, Contact kit Mersen G227959A for fuse size 22x58. 1mA/4V AC or DC Contact kit Mersen E227612A, for fuse size 27x60 100mA/20V AC or DC

Mains Network Measurements

All network measurements are calculated over a full mains cycle, but internally updated every half-cycle. For this reason, power control, current limits and alarms all run at the mains half-cycle rate. The calculations are based on waveform samples taken at a rate of 20kHz. The phase voltage referred to is the line voltage referenced to N input potential (load with neutral coupling).

The parameters below are directly derived from measurements for each phase.

Accuracy (20 to 25°C)

Line frequency (F):	±0.02Hz
Line RMS voltage (Vline):	±2% of Nominal Vline.
Load RMS voltage (V):	±2% of Nominal V for voltage readings
	>1% of Nominal V. Unspecified for
	readings lower than 1%Vnom.
Load current (I _{RMS}):	$\pm 2\%$ of Nominal I _{RMS} for current readings
	>3.3% of Nominal I _{RMS} . Unspecified for
	readings \leq 3.3% of Nominal. I _{RMS} .
Load RMS voltage squared (Vsq):	±2% of (Nominal V) ²
Thyristor RMS current squared (Isq):	±2% of (Nominal I) ²
True load power (P):	±2% of (Nominal V) × (Nominal I)
Frequency resolution	0.1 Hz
Measurement resolution	11 bits of Nominal value
Measurement drift with ambient	<0.02% of reading / °C
temp.	

Further parameters (S, PF, Z, IsqBurst, Vsq Burst, and PBurst) are derived from the above, for the network (if relevant). See "Network Meas Menu" on page 189 for further details.

WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

• At commissioning, ensure correct product configuration.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury or equipment damage.

To reach accuracy as stated above, Nominal current parameter (INominal) must be set between 25% & 100% of product current rating.

Communications

Connection	Dual port Ethernet - RJ45
Cable type	Shielded RJ45 CAT5+
Protocol	Modbus TCP,
	Ethernet/IP, or PROFINET (both, a chargeable option)
Baud rate	10/100 full or half duplex
Indicators	Tx activity (green) and communications activity
	(yellow)



Scan for local contacts

Eurotherm Ltd

Faraday Close Durrington Worthing West Sussex BN13 3PL Phone: +44 (0)1903 268500 www.eurotherm.com

As standards, specifications, and designs change from time to time, please ask for confirmation of the information given in this publication.

© 2021 Eurotherm Limited. All Rights Reserved.

HA033541 Issue 02 (CN38980)

